CITROËN BERLINGO BERLINGO VAN

HANDBOOK

SCAN MY CITROËN

MY CITROËN

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

Access to the Handbook

MOBILE APPLICATIONS

Install the **Scan MyCitroën** application (content available offline).

Also available in the **MyCitroën App** application.

ONLINE

View or download the handbook at the following address:

http://service.citroen.com/ACddb/

Scan this QR Code for direct access.

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle and body style,
- the issue period of the handbook corresponding to the date of 1st registration of the vehicle.

This symbol indicates the latest information available.

Welcome

Thank you for choosing a Citroën Berlingo/ë-Berlingo or a Citroën Berlingo Van/ë-Berlingo Van.
This document contains the key information and recommendations you will need to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety. We strongly recommend familiarising yourself with it, as well as the Maintenance and Warranty Guide.
Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.
The descriptions and illustrations are for guidance only.
Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this document.
If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Handbook** is passed on to the new owner.

Key

Safety warning

Additional information

Environmental protection feature

Left-hand drive vehicle

Right-hand drive vehicle

Location of equipment/button indicated using a black area

Key

This key allows you to identify the special features of your vehicle:

Van

Crew cab

5 seats

7 seats

Overview

Overview 4
Labels 6

Eco-driving

1 Instruments

Instrument panels 10
Digital instrument panel 11
Warning and indicator lamps 13
Indicators 20
Trip computer 27
Touch screen BLUETOOTH audio system 28
Touch screen 29
Setting the date and time 31

2 Access

Electronic key with remote control function and built-in key, 32
Back-up procedures 38
Central locking / unlocking 41
Doors 43
General recommendations for the sliding side doors 43
Rear roof flap 44
Alarm 45
Electric windows 47
Tilting rear door windows 49

3 Ease of use and comfort

General recommendations for the seats 50
Front seats 50
Steering wheel adjustment 53
Mirrors 53
2-seat front bench seat 55
Rear bench seat (row 2) 56
Rear seats (row 2) 57
Rear seats (row 3) 57
Interior fittings 60
Two-position luggage cover shelf (removable) 65
Luggage cover (7-seat) 66
Warning triangle 67
Extenso Cab 68
Crew cab 70
Heating and Ventilation 73
Heating 74
Manual air conditioning 74
Dual-zone automatic air conditioning 75
Front demisting - de-icing 77
Heated windscreen 78
Demisting/de-icing the rear screen and/or the door mirrors 78
Rear heating and air conditioning 79
Additional heating/ventilation system 79
Temperature conditioning (Electric) 81

4 Lighting and visibility

Lighting control stalk 83
Direction indicators 84
Automatic illumination of headlamps 84
Daytime running lamps / Sidelamps 85
Guide-me-home and welcome lighting 85
Automatic lighting systems - General recommendations 86
Automatic headlamp dipping 86
Headlamp beam height adjustment 88
Wiper control stalk 88
Changing a wiper blade 90
Automatic wipers 90

5 Safety

General safety recommendations 92
Emergency or assistance 92
Hazard warning lamps 94
Horn 95
Pedestrian horn (Electric) 95
Electronic stability control (ESC) 95
Advanced Grip Control 97
Hill Assist Descent Control 98
Seat belts 99
Airbags 103
Child seats 106
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 108
ISOFIX child seats 112
i-Size child seats 115
Manual child lock 116
Electric child lock 116

6 Driving

Driving recommendations 117
Starting/switching off the engine 119
Manual parking brake 123
Electric parking brake 123
Hill start assist 126
5-speed manual gearbox 126
6-speed manual gearbox 127
Automatic gearbox 127
Drive selector (Electric) 132
Driving modes 133
Gear shift indicator 134
Stop & Start (Petrol or Diesel) 134
Tyre under-inflation detection 136
Head-up display 138
Driving and manoeuvring aids - General recommendations 139
Road signs recognition 140
Speed limiter 143
Cruise control - Specific recommendations 146
Programmable cruise control 146
Adaptive cruise control 148
Memorising speeds 152
Active Safety Brake with Collision Risk Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance 152
Active lane departure warning system 155
Blind spot monitoring 158

Distraction detection 160
Parking sensors 161
Reversing Camera 163
Surround Rear Vision 164
Top Rear Vision 166
Park Assist 169

Practical information 7
Compatibility of fuels 174
Refuelling 174
Misfuel prevention (Diesel) 175
Charging system (Electric) 176
Charging the traction battery (Electric) 183
Energy economy mode 187
Snow chains 188
Very cold climate screen 188
Towing device 189
Overload indicator 190
Roof bars / Roof rack 191
Bonnet 192
Engine compartment 192
Checking levels 193
Checks 195
AdBlue® (BlueHDi) 197
Free-wheeling 199
Advice on care and maintenance 200

In the event of a breakdown 8
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 202
Tool kit 202
Temporary puncture repair kit 204
Spare wheel 206
Changing a bulb 209
Fuses 214
12 V battery / Accessory battery 214
Towing 218

Technical data 9
Dimensions 221
Engine technical data and towed loads 227
Petrol engine 228
Diesel engine 229
Electric motor 235
Identification markings 236

Touch screen BLUETOOTH audio system 10
First steps 237
Steering mounted controls 237
Menus 238
Radio 239
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio 240
Media 241
Telephone 242
Settings 244
Frequently asked questions 244

CITROËN Connect Radio 11
First steps 247
Steering mounted controls 248
Menus 249
Applications 250
Radio 250
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio 252
Media 252
Telephone 253
Settings 256
Frequently asked questions 258

CITROËN Connect Nav 12
First steps 260
Steering mounted controls 261
Menus 261
Voice commands 263
Navigation 266
Connected navigation 269
Applications 271
Radio 274
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio 275
Media 275
Telephone 277
Settings 279
Frequently asked questions 281

Event data recorders 13

Alphabetical index ■

Access to additional videos

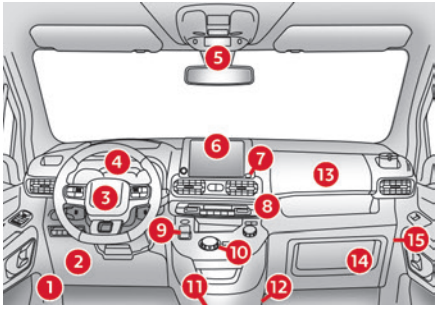
http://q-r.to/bagGl9

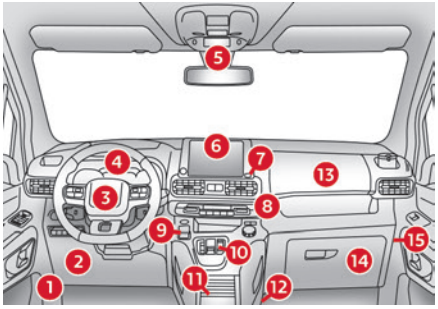
Presentation

Presentation

These illustrations and descriptions are intended as a guide. The presence and location of some components varies according to the version, trim level and country of sale.

Instruments and controls



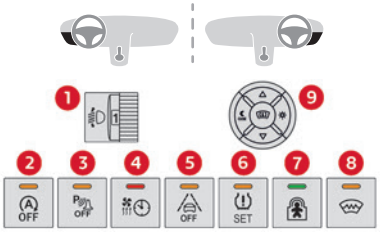


1. Bonnet release
2. Dashboard fuses
3. Horn
4. Instrument panel
5. Alarm
   Courtesy lamp
   Emergency or assistance call
   Interior rear view mirror or Surround Rear Vision reproduction screen (Citroën Berlingo Van)
   Monitoring mirror (Citroën Berlingo)
   Warning lamps display for seat belts and front passenger airbag (Citroën Berlingo)
   Panoramic roof blind control (Citroën Berlingo)
6. Touch screen BLUETOOTH audio system
   Touch screen with CITROËN Connect Radio or CITROËN Connect Nav
7. USB socket
8. Heating/Air conditioning
   Front demisting – de-icing
   Rear screen demisting – de-icing
9. Electric parking brake
   "START/STOP" button
10. Gearbox (Petrol or Diesel)
    Drive selector
11. 12 V socket
12. 230 V accessory socket
13. Glove box
14. Storage compartment
    Glove box
15. Front passenger airbag deactivation (on the side of the glove box, with the door open)

Steering-mounted controls

1. External lighting/direction indicators control stalk
   Surround Rear Vision view change button (Citroën Berlingo Van)
   Voice recognition activation button
2. Wiper/screenwash/trip computer control stalk
3. Controls to select the multimedia source (**SRC**), manage music (**LIST**) and manage phone calls ("**telephone**" symbol)
4. Speed Limiter/Programmable Cruise Control/ Adaptive cruise control controls
5. Instrument panel display mode selection wheel
6. Voice control
   Volume adjustment
7. Audio system setting controls

Side control bar

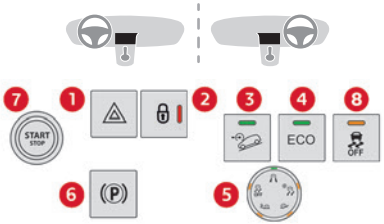


1. Manual headlamp beam height adjustment
2. Stop & Start
3. Parking sensors
4. Additional heating/ventilation system (Diesel)
   Temperature pre-conditioning (Electric)
5. Active Lane Departure Warning System
6. Tyre under-inflation detection
7. Electric child lock
8. Heated windscreen
9. Head-up display

Controls on the driver's door

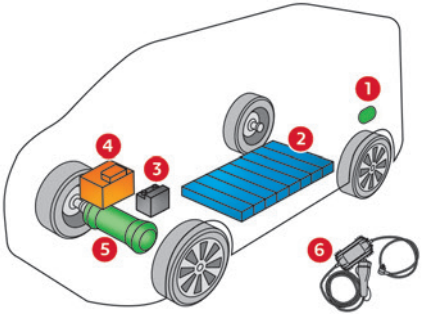
1. Locking/unlocking the loading area (Citroën Berlingo Van)
2. Electric child lock

Central control bar



1. Hazard warning lamps
2. Locking/unlocking from the inside
3. Hill Assist Descent
4. Eco mode
5. Advanced Grip Control
6. Electric parking brake
7. Starting/switching off the engine
8. DSC/ASR systems

Electric motor



1. Charging connectors
2. Traction battery
3. 12 V accessory battery
4. On-board charger
5. Electric motor
6. Charging cable

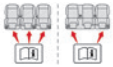
The charging connectors **1** allow 3 types of charging:
– Domestic charging in mode 2 using a domestic socket and associated charging cable **6**.
– Accelerated charging in mode 3 using an accelerated charging unit (Wallbox).
– Superfast charging in mode 4 using a fast public charger.
The 400 V traction battery **2** uses Lithium-Ion technology. It stores and supplies the energy required for the operation of the electric motor, air conditioning and heating. Its charge level is

represented by an indicator and a reserve power warning lamp on the instrument panel.
The 12 V accessory battery **3** powers the vehicle's conventional electrical system. It is recharged automatically by the traction battery via the on-board charger.
The on-board charger **4** provides domestic charging (mode 2) and accelerated charging (mode 3) of the traction battery as well as recharging of the 12 V accessory battery.
The electric motor **5** provides propulsion in accordance with the selected driving mode and driving conditions. It recovers energy during vehicle braking and deceleration phases.

Labels

"Access - 2-seat front bench seat" (Citroën Berlingo Van) section:

"Ease of use and comfort - General recommendations for seats" (Citroën Berlingo) section:



"Ease of use and comfort - Interior fittings - Wireless smartphone charger" section:

"Ease of use and comfort - Extenso Cab" (Citroën Berlingo Van) section:

"Ease of use and comfort - Crew cab" (Citroën Berlingo Van) section:

"Ease of use and comfort - Additional heating/ventilation system" section:

"Lighting and visibility - Lighting control", "In the event of a breakdown - Changing a bulb" sections:

"Safety - Child seats - Deactivating the front passenger airbag" section:

"Safety - ISOFIX child seats" (Citroën Berlingo) section:

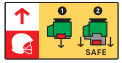
"Safety - Manual child lock" section:

"Driving - Electric parking brake" section:

"Driving - Fixed speed limiter" section:

"Practical information - Compatibility of fuels" section:

"Practical information - Charging system (Electric)" section:



"Practical information - Charging the traction battery (Electric)" section:

"Practical information - Overload indicator" (Citroën Berlingo Van) section:

"Practical information - Bonnet" section:

"Practical information - Checking levels" section:

"In the event of a breakdown - Spare wheel" section:

"In the event of a breakdown - 12 V battery/ Accessory battery" section:

Eco-driving

Eco-driving refers to a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise the vehicle's energy consumption (fuel and/or electricity) and CO_2 emissions.

Optimise your use of the gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up promptly. While accelerating, change up early.
With an automatic gearbox, favour automatic mode. Do not depress the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.
The gear shift indicator prompts you to engage the most suitable gear. Whenever this indication is displayed on the instrument panel, follow it straight away.
With an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal and press the accelerator gradually. These practices help to save on energy consumption, reduce CO_2 emissions and decrease general traffic noise.
Favour the use of the "Eco" driving mode.
With an EAT8 gearbox, with the gear selector in mode **D**, favour "free-wheeling" by gradually lifting your foot fully off the accelerator pedal in order to save fuel.
When the traffic is flowing smoothly, select the cruise control.

Control the use of electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.
At speeds above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.
Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (e.g. sunroof blind, window blinds).
Unless automatically regulated, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.
Switch off the demisting and defrosting functions, if they are not managed automatically.
Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.
Adapt your use of the headlamps and/or foglamps to the level of visibility, in accordance with current legislation in the country in which you are driving.
Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter (other than in severe wintry conditions: temperature below -23°C). The vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.
As a passenger, avoid connecting your multimedia devices (e.g. film, music, video game) to help reduce the consumption of energy.
Disconnect all portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle. Place the heaviest items in the boot as close as possible to the rear seats.
Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and minimise wind resistance (e.g. roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer). Preferably, use a roof box.
Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.
At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit summer tyres.

Comply with the servicing instructions

Check tyre pressures regularly, with the tyres cold, referring to the label in the door aperture on the driver's side.
Carry out this check in particular:
– before a long journey.
– at each change of season.
– after a long period out of use.
Do not forget the spare wheel and, where applicable, the tyres on your trailer or caravan.
Have your vehicle serviced regularly (e.g. engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter, etc.). Observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.
With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system has a fault, your vehicle will emit pollution. Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to restore your vehicle's nitrogen oxide emissions to legal levels.
When filling the fuel tank, do not continue after the third cut-out of the nozzle, to avoid overflow.

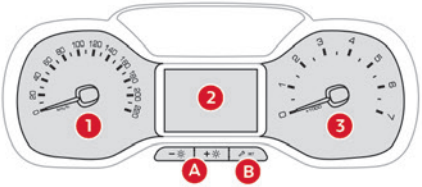
You will only see the fuel consumption of your new vehicle settle down to a consistent average after the first 1,900 miles (3,000 kilometres).

Optimising the driving range (Electric)

The vehicle's consumption of electrical energy greatly depends on the route, speed and driving style, as well as the use of the heating/air conditioning.
Try to remain in the "**ECO**" zone on the power indicator, by driving smoothly and maintaining a steady speed.
Anticipate the need to slow down, and brake smoothly, whenever possible using engine braking with the regenerative braking function, which will move the power indicator into the "**CHARGE**" zone.
Use the air conditioning rather than the heating to demist the passenger compartment.

Instrument panels

LCD symbols instrument panel



Dials

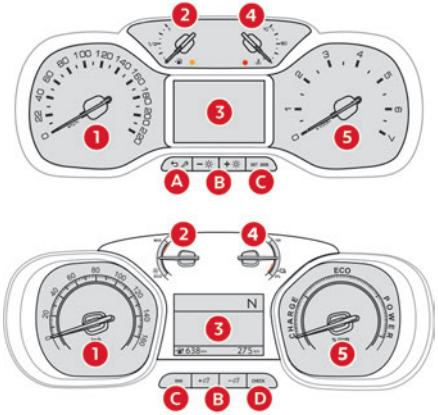
1. Speedometer (mph or km/h)
2. Display screen
3. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm)

Control buttons

A. General lighting dimmer.
After a long press on **SET**: change the set time values and the units.

B. Reminder of servicing information or the driving range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.
Resetting of the selected function (service indicator or trip distance recorder).
After a long press: change the set time values and the units.

LCD text/matrix instrument panels



Dials

1. Speedometer (mph or km/h)
2. Fuel gauge (Petrol or Diesel)
   Thermal comfort consumption indicator (Electric)
3. Display screen
4. Coolant temperature gauge (Petrol or Diesel)
   Charge level indicator (Electric)
5. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm) (Petrol or Diesel)
   CHARGE, **ECO**, **POWER** or **NEUTRAL** (between **ECO** and **CHARGE**) power indicator (Electric)
   READY indicator lamp (Electric)

Control buttons

A. Temporary reminder of servicing information, or reminder of the driving range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.
Depending on version: go back up a level or cancel the current operation.

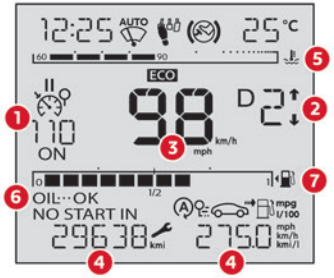
B. Lighting dimmer.
Depending on version: browse a menu or list, or change a value.
Reset the trip distance recorder (long press).
Reset the service indicator.
Depending on version: enter the configuration menu and confirm a choice (short press).

C. Reset the trip distance recorder (long press).
Reset the service indicator.
Depending on version: enter the configuration menu and confirm a choice (short press).

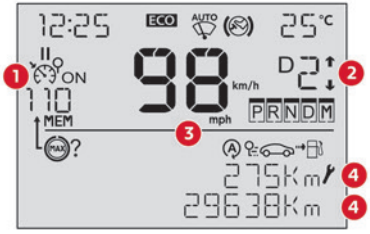
D. Resetting the service indicator.
Temporary reminder of servicing information.
Reminder of the driving range with the AdBlue® system (Diesel).
Depending on version: go back up a level, cancel the current operation.

Displays

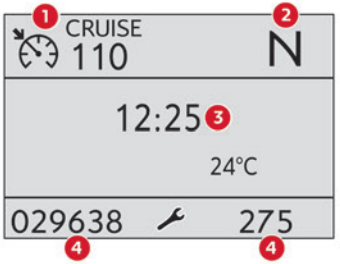
With LCD symbols display



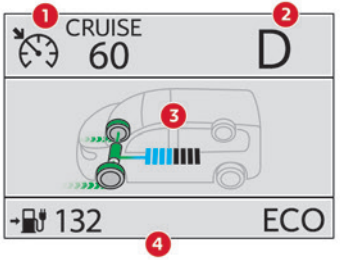
With LCD text display



With matrix display



With matrix display (Electric)

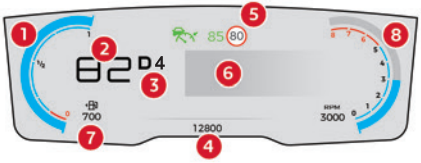


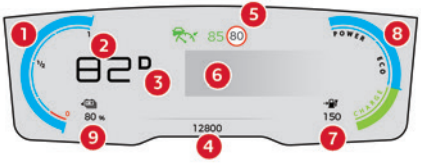
i When travelling abroad, you may need to change the distance unit: the speed must be displayed in the country's official unit (mph or km/h). The unit is changed via the screen's configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

1. Cruise control or speed limiter settings
   Display of speed limit signs
2. Gear shift indicator (Petrol or Diesel)
   Gear with an automatic gearbox (Petrol or Diesel) or Drive selector position (Electric)
3. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h) with LCD symbols and LCD text instrument panel (Petrol or Diesel).
   Display area with matrix instrument panel: alert or function status message, trip computer, digital speedometer (mph or km/h), power flow/vehicle charge state (Electric), etc.
4. Service indicator, then total distance recorder (miles or km)
   Trip distance recorder (miles or km) (Petrol or Diesel)
   Remaining range/Driving mode selected (Electric)
   Display area with LCD text instrument panel: alert or function status message, trip computer, etc.
5. Engine coolant temperature gauge
6. Engine oil level indicator
7. Fuel gauge

Digital instrument panel

Depending on the page displayed, certain information is not displayed or is presented differently.
Example with the "**DIALS**" display mode:





1. Fuel gauge (Petrol or Diesel)
   Charge level indicator (Electric)
2. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h)
   READY indicator lamp (Electric)
3. Gear shift indicator (arrow and recommended gear) (Petrol or Diesel)
   Selector position and gear on automatic gearbox (Petrol or Diesel)
   Drive selector position
   Driving mode selected (other than "**Normal**" mode):
   – "**Eco**"
   – "**Power**" (Electric)
4. Total distance recorder (miles or km)
5. Cruise control/speed limiter setting
   Display of speed limit signs
6. Personalisable area: current media, driving aids, navigation (depending on equipment), current trip information (driving range, consumption, average speed), coolant temperature
7. Remaining range (miles or km)
8. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm) (Petrol or Diesel)
   Power indicator (Electric)
9. Traction battery charge level percentage (Electric)

Displays

For certain functions that have indicator lamps for both operation and deactivation, there is only one dedicated location.

Permanent information

In the standard display, the instrument panel shows:

– in fixed locations:
  - Information related to the gearbox and gear shift indicator (Petrol or Diesel).
  - Information related to the drive selector.
  - Fuel gauge (Petrol or Diesel).
  - Range (Petrol or Diesel).
  - Coolant temperature indicator (Petrol or Diesel).
  - Charge level and range indicator (Electric).
  - Power indicator (Electric).
  - Driving mode.
  - Status or alert messages displayed temporarily.

– in variable locations:
  - Warning lamps.
  - Digital speedometer.
  - Total distance recorder.

Optional information

Depending on the selected display mode and active features, additional information may be displayed:

– Rev counter (Petrol or Diesel).
– Trip computer.
– Driving aid functions.
– Speed limiter or cruise control.
– Media currently playing.
– Navigation instructions.
– Analogue speedometer.
– Engine information (Power-meters) in Power (Electric) mode.
– Energy flows (Electric).

Personalising the instrument panel

Depending on version, the appearance of the instrument panel can be modified (colour and/or display mode).

Display language and units
These depend on the touch screen settings.
When travelling abroad, the speed must be shown in the official units of the country you are driving in (mph, miles or km/h, km).

As a safety measure, these adjustments must be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Choice of display colour (Petrol or Diesel)

Depending on version, the instrument panel display colour depends on the colour scheme chosen in the touch screen.

The settings are changed via the **Settings** touch screen menu.

Choosing the display mode

In each mode, specific types of information are displayed on the instrument panel.

► Turn the thumbwheel on the left of the steering wheel to display and scroll through the various modes on the instrument panel.
► Press the thumbwheel to confirm the mode.
If you do not press the thumbwheel, the selected display mode is automatically applied after a few moments.

Display modes

– "**Dials**": standard display of analogue and digital speedometers, total distance recorder and:
- fuel gauge, coolant temperature indicator and rev counter (Petrol or Diesel).
- battery charge level indicator and power indicator (Electric).

– "**Navigation**": specific display, showing current navigation information (map and instructions).
– "**Driving**": specific display, showing information relating to active driving aid systems.
– "**Minimum**": 2D display with digital speedometer, total distance recorder and:
- fuel gauge and coolant temperature indicator (Petrol or Diesel).
- battery charge level indicator (Electric).

– "**Energy**": specific display, showing a visual representation of the vehicle's energy flows (Electric).
– "**Personal 1**"/"**Personal 2**": display showing information selected by the driver in the central part of the instrument panel.

Configuring a "Personal" display mode

With CITROËN Connect Radio

► Press **Settings** in the banner of the touch screen.

► Select "**Configuration**".

► Select "**Instrument panel personalisation**".

With CITROËN Connect Nav

► Press **Settings** in the banner of the touch screen.
► Select "**OPTIONS**".

► Select "**Instrument panel personalisation**".
► Select "**Personal 1**" or "**Personal 2**".

► Select the type of information using the scroll arrows on the touch screen:
- "**Default**" (empty).
- "**Trip computer**".
- "**Media**".
- "**Accessories consumption**" (depending on version).
- "**Rev counter**" (Petrol or Diesel).

> ℹ If the "**Default**" type of information is selected, "**Personal 1**" or "**Personal 2**" are no longer shown in the list of display modes.

► Confirm to save and exit.
"Personal" mode is displayed immediately.
The information is displayed immediately on the instrument panel if the corresponding display mode is selected.

> ℹ The type of information selected in "**Personal 1**" mode is not available in "**Personal 2**" mode.

Warning and indicator lamps

Displayed as symbols, the warning and indicator lamps inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamps) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamps). Certain lamps light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colours.

Associated warnings

The illumination of a lamp may be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a screen.
Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each lamp for further information.

When the ignition is switched on

Certain red or orange warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lamps should go off as soon as the engine is started.
For more information on a system or a function, refer to the corresponding section.

Persistent warning lamp

If a red or orange warning lamp comes on, there may be fault which needs further investigation.

If a lamp remains lit

The references **(1)**, **(2)** and **(3)** in the warning and indicator lamp description indicate whether you should contact a qualified professional in addition to the immediate recommended actions.
(1): **You must stop the vehicle**.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
(2): Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
(3): Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

List of warning and indicator lamps

Red warning/indicator lamps

System malfunction (Electric)

Fixed.
A fault involving the electric motor or traction battery has been detected.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Cable connected (Electric)

Fixed when the ignition is switched on.
The charging cable is connected to the vehicle's connector.

Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal.
It is not possible to start the vehicle while the charging cable is connected to the vehicle’s connector.
Disconnect the charging cable and close the flap.

STOP

Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
A serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering or automatic gearbox or a major electrical fault has been detected.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Engine oil pressure

Fixed.
There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Braking

Fixed.
The brake fluid level in the braking circuit has dropped significantly.
Carry out (1), then top up with fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (2).

Fixed.
The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Parking brake

Fixed.
The parking brake is applied or not properly released.

Maximum coolant temperature (Petrol or Diesel)

Fixed (warning lamp or LED), with the needle in the red zone (depending on version).
The temperature of the cooling system is too high.
Carry out (1), then wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, carry out (2).

12 V battery charge

Fixed.
The battery charging circuit is faulty (e.g. dirty terminals, loose or severed alternator belt).
Clean and tighten the terminals. If the warning lamp does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (2).

Power steering

Fixed.
The power steering has a fault.
Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

Seat belts not fastened/unfastened

Fixed or flashing, accompanied by an increasing audible signal.
A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened (depending on version).

Door open

Fixed, associated with a message indicating which access is open.
An audible signal supplements the alert if the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h).
A door, the boot, the tailgate or the opening rear screen is still open (depending on version).
Close whichever access is open.
If your vehicle is equipped with a right-hand side-hinged door, this warning lamp will **not** indicate that it is open.

Electric parking brake

Fixed.
The electric parking brake is applied.

Flashing.
Application/release is faulty.
Carry out (1): park on flat ground (on a level surface).
With a manual gearbox, engage a gear.
With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, select mode **P**.
Switch off the ignition and carry out (2).

Orange warning/indicator lamps

Automatic functions deactivated (electric parking brake)

Fixed.
The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" (on acceleration) functions are deactivated.
If automatic application/release is no longer possible:
► Start the engine.
► Use the control to apply the electric parking brake.
► Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
► Hold the control pressed in the release direction for between 10 and 15 seconds.
► Release the control.
► Depress and hold the brake pedal.
► Pull the control in the application direction for 2 seconds.
► Release the control and the brake pedal.

Malfunction (electric parking brake)

Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".
The parking brake no longer delivers optimum performance for parking the vehicle safely in all circumstances.
Make the vehicle safe:
► Park on a level surface.
► With a manual gearbox, engage a gear.
► With an automatic gearbox, with **P** selected, place the supplied chocks against one of the wheels.
Then carry out (2).

Flashing, when the vehicle is started.
The parking brake has not been properly released.
Carry out (1) and try to fully release the parking brake using the control lever, with your foot on the brake pedal.
If the problem persists, carry out (2).

Fixed, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake fault**".
The electric parking brake is faulty: manual and automatic functions may not be working.
When stationary, to immobilise the vehicle:
► Pull the electric parking brake control and hold it for approximately 7 to 15 seconds, until the indicator lamp lights up on the instrument panel.

If this procedure does not work, secure the vehicle:

► Park on a level surface.

► With a manual gearbox, engage a gear.

► With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, select **P**, then place the supplied chock against one of the wheels.

Then carry out (2).

Fixed, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake fault**".

The vehicle cannot be immobilised with the engine running.

If manual application and release commands are not working, the electric parking brake control is faulty.

The automatic functions must be used at all times and are automatically reactivated in the event of a fault with the control.

Carry out (2).

Low fuel level

Fixed (warning lamp or LED) and needle in the red zone (depending on version), accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

When it first comes on, there remains **less than 6 litres** of fuel in the tank.

Until the fuel level is topped up, this alert will be repeated every time the ignition is switched on, with increasing frequency as the fuel level decreases and approaches zero.

Refuel without delay to avoid running out of fuel.

Never drive until completely empty, as this could damage the emissions control and injection systems.

Low traction battery level (Electric)

Fixed LED and needle in the red zone, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

The state of charge of the traction battery is low.

View the remaining range.

Put the vehicle on charge as soon as possible.

Tortoise mode with limited driving range (Electric)

Fixed.

The state of charge of the traction battery is critical.

The engine power gradually decreases.

You must put the vehicle on charge.

If the warning lamp remains lit, carry out (2).

Pedestrian horn (Electric)

Fixed.

Horn fault detected.

Carry out (3).

Water in Diesel fuel filter (Diesel)

Fixed (with LCD symbols instrument panel).

The Diesel fuel filter contains water.

Carry out (2) without delay. Risk of damaging the fuel injection system!

Engine self-diagnostic system

Flashing.

The engine management system has a fault.

There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed.

You **must** carry out (2).

Fixed.

The emissions control system has a fault.

The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started.

Carry out (3) without delay.

Fixed.

A minor engine fault has been detected.

Carry out (3).

Fixed.

A major engine fault has been detected.

Carry out (1) and then (2).

Engine preheating (Diesel)

Temporarily on

(up to approximately 30 seconds in severe weather conditions).

When switching on the ignition, if the weather conditions and the engine temperature make it necessary.

Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting.

If the engine does not start, make the engine starting request again, while keeping your foot on the pedal.

Under-inflation

Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

The pressure in one or more tyres is too low.

Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible.
Reinitialise the detection system after adjusting the pressure.

Under-inflation warning lamp flashing then fixed and Service warning lamp fixed.
The tyre pressure monitoring system is faulty.
Under-inflation detection is no longer monitored.
Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible and carry out (3).

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Fixed.
The anti-lock braking system has a fault.
The vehicle retains conventional braking.
Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake

Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.
The system has been deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

Flashing.
The system activates and brakes the vehicle momentarily to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle in front.
For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Fixed.
The system has a fault.
If these warning lamps come on after the engine is switched off and then restarted, carry out (3).

Particle filter (Diesel)

Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message about the risk of particle filter blockage.
The particle filter is nearing saturation.
As soon as traffic conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h), with an engine speed of above 2,500 rpm, until the warning lamp goes off.

Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that the additive level in the particle filter is too low.
The low level in the additive tank has been reached.
Top up without delay: carry out (3).

Airbags

Fixed.
One of the airbags or seat belt pyrotechnic pretensioners is faulty.
Carry out (3).

Front passenger airbag (ON)

Fixed.
The front passenger airbag is activated.
The control is set to the "**ON**" position.
In this case, do not install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat - risk of serious injury!

Front passenger airbag (OFF)

Fixed.
The front passenger airbag is deactivated.
The control is set to the "**OFF**" position.
A "rearward facing" child seat can be installed, unless there is a fault with the airbags (Airbags warning lamp on).

Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

Fixed.
The system is deactivated.
The DSC/ASR system is reactivated automatically when the vehicle is restarted, and at speeds above approximately 31 mph (50 km/h).
At speeds below 31 mph (50 km/h), it can be reactivated manually.

Flashing.
DSC/ASR system regulation is activated in the event of a loss of grip or trajectory.

Fixed.
The DSC/ASR system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Hill start assist

Fixed, accompanied by the message "**Anti roll-back system fault**".
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Emergency brake malfunction (with electric parking brake)

Fixed, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake fault**".
Emergency braking does not deliver optimal performance.
If automatic release is not available, use manual release or carry out (3).

Active lane departure warning system

Fixed.
The system has been automatically deactivated or placed on standby.

Flashing.
You are about to cross a broken lane marking without operating the direction indicators.
The system is activated, then corrects the trajectory if it detects a risk of unintentionally crossing a line or hard shoulder (depending on version).
For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

Fixed.
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Overload indicator (Citroën Berlingo Van)

Fixed.
The load on board the vehicle exceeds the maximum authorised load.
The load on board the vehicle must be decreased.

Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.
The overload indicator system has a fault.
Carry out (2).

AdBlue® (with 1.6 BlueHDi Euro 6.1)

AdBlue Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.
The driving range is between 1,500 and 370 miles (2,400 and 600 km).
You must quickly top up the AdBlue®, or carry out (3).

AdBlue AdBlue® warning lamp flashing and Service warning lamp fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.
The driving range is less than 375 miles (600 km).
You **must** top up the AdBlue® to **avoid a breakdown**, or carry out (3).

AdBlue AdBlue® warning lamp flashing and Service warning lamp fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.
The AdBlue® tank is empty: the legally required engine immobiliser system prevents the engine from starting.
To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue®, or carry out (2).
You **must** add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

AdBlue® (with 1.5 BlueHDi Euro 6.2/6.3)

AdBlue On for around 30 seconds when starting the vehicle, accompanied by a message indicating the driving range.
The driving range is between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km).
Top up the AdBlue®.

AdBlue Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.
The driving range is between 500 and 62 miles (800 and 100 km).
Promptly top up the AdBlue®, or carry out (3).

AdBlue Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.
The driving range is less than 62 miles (100 km).
You **must** top up the AdBlue® to **avoid engine starting being prevented**, or carry out (3).

AdBlue Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.
The AdBlue® tank is empty: the legally required engine immobiliser system prevents the engine from starting.
To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue® or carry out (2).
It is **essential** to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.

SCR emissions control system (BlueHDi)

Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
A malfunction of the SCR emissions control system has been detected.
This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.

Flashing AdBlue® warning lamp on switching on the ignition, with the Service and Engine self-diagnostics warning lamps on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.
Depending on the message displayed, it is possible to drive for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the engine immobiliser is triggered.
Carry out (3) without delay, to **avoid starting being prevented**.

Flashing AdBlue® warning lamp on switching on the ignition, with the Service and Engine self-diagnostics warning lamps on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.
The engine immobiliser prevents the engine from restarting (the permitted driving limit has been exceeded after confirmation of a malfunction of the emissions control system).
To start the engine, carry out (2).

Service

Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.
One or more minor faults, for which there is/are no specific warning lamp(s), have been detected.
Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel.
You may be able to deal with some faults yourself, such as changing the battery in the remote control.
For other faults, such as with the tyre under-inflation detection system, carry out (3).

Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.
One or more major faults, for which there is/are no specific warning lamp(s), have been detected.
Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel, then carry out (3).

Fixed, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake fault**".
Automatic release of the electric parking brake is unavailable.
Carry out (2).

Service warning lamp fixed and service spanner flashing then fixed.
The servicing interval has been exceeded.
The vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.
Only with BlueHDi Diesel engines.

Rear foglamp

Fixed.
The lamp is on.

Green warning/indicator lamps

Stop & Start

Fixed.
When the vehicle stops, the Stop & Start puts the engine into STOP mode.

Flashing temporarily.
STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.
For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

Vehicle ready to drive (Electric)

Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal when it comes on.
The vehicle is ready to drive and the thermal comfort systems are available.
The indicator lamp goes out upon reaching a speed of approximately 3 mph (5 km/h) and lights up again when the vehicle stops moving.
The lamp will go out when you turn off the engine and exit the vehicle.

Hill Assist Descent Control

Fixed.
The system has been activated, but the conditions for regulation are not met (gradient, speed too high, gear engaged).

Flashing.
The function is regulating the speed of the vehicle.

The vehicle is being braked; the brake lamps come on during the descent.

Eco mode (Petrol or Diesel)

Fixed.
ECO mode is active.
Some parameters are adjusted to reduce the fuel consumption.

Automatic wiping

Fixed.
Automatic windscreen wiping is activated.

Front foglamps

Fixed.
The front foglamps are on.

Sidelamps

Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Direction indicators

Flashing with audible signal.
The direction indicators are on.

Dipped beam headlamps

Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Automatic headlamp dipping

Fixed.
The function has been activated via the touch screen (**Driving/Vehicle** menu).
The lighting control stalk is in the "AUTO" position.
For more information, refer to the **Lighting and visibility** section.

Blue warning/indicator lamps

Main beam headlamps

Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Black/white warning lamps

Foot on the brake

Fixed.
Insufficient or no pressure on the brake pedal.
With the automatic gearbox or the drive selector, it may be necessary to depress the brake pedal to unlock the gearbox from mode **N**.

Foot on the clutch

Fixed.
Stop & Start: the change to START mode is rejected because the clutch pedal is not fully depressed.
Fully depress the clutch pedal.

Automatic wiping

Fixed.
Automatic front wiping is activated.

Hill Assist Descent Control

Fixed.
(grey)
The function has been activated, but is currently paused because the speed is too high.
Reduce the vehicle speed to below 19 mph (30 km/h).

Indicators

Service indicator

The servicing information is expressed in terms of distance (miles or kilometres) and time (months or days).
The alert is given at whichever of these two terms is reached first.
The servicing information is displayed in the instrument panel. Depending on the version of the vehicle:
– The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance travelled since it was due preceded by the "-" sign.
– An alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

> The value indicated is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service.
> The alert may also be triggered close to a due date.

Service spanner

On temporarily when the ignition is switched on.
Between 620 and 1,860 miles (1,000 and 3,000 km) remain before the next service is due.

Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.
The next service is due in less than 620 miles (1,000 km).

Have your vehicle serviced very soon.

Service spanner flashing

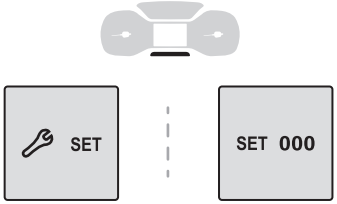
Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on.
(With BlueHDi Diesel engines, associated with the Service warning lamp.)
The servicing interval has been exceeded.
Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Resetting the service indicator

The service indicator must be reset after each service.

► Switch the ignition off.

With LCD symbols and LCD text or matrix instrument panel



► Press and hold this button.

► Switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown.

► Release the button when **=0** is displayed; the spanner disappears.

With digital instrument panel

The service indicator is reset using the "**Check**" button in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

> If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes for the reset to be registered.

Reminder of the servicing information

You can access the servicing information at any time.

With LCD symbols and LCD text or matrix instrument panel

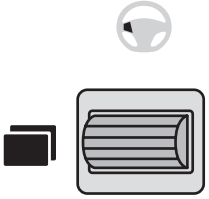
► Press the trip distance recorder reset button.

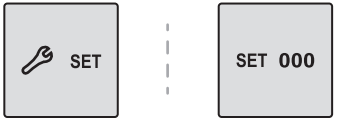
With digital instrument panel

You can view the servicing information by pressing the "**Check**" button in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.
The servicing information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

Instrument panel display screen

With LCD symbols and LCD text or matrix instrument panel





With the vehicle stationary, use the left-hand thumbwheel on the steering wheel or the "**SET**" button on the instrument panel to move through the menus to configure certain vehicle settings.

Thumbwheel operation:

– Press: open the **Main menu**; confirm the selection.

– Rotate (other than in a menu): scroll through the list of available active functions.

– Rotate (in a menu): move up or down in the menu.

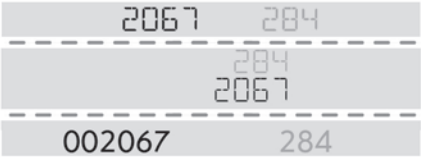
With digital instrument panel

You can configure some of the vehicle's settings by pressing the "**Check**" button in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Distance recorders

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

Total distance recorder



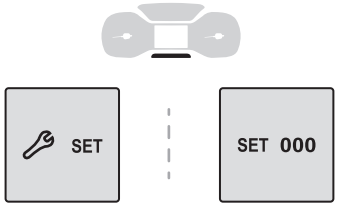
This measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its initial registration.

Trip distance recorder

This measures the distance travelled since it was last reset by the driver.

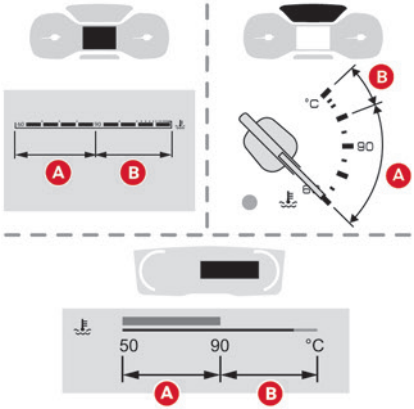
Resetting the trip recorder

With LCD symbols and LCD text or matrix instrument panel



► With the ignition on, press the button until zeros appear.

Coolant temperature indicator



With the engine running:

– In zone **A**, the temperature is correct.

– In zone **B**, the temperature is too high.

The associated warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp light up in red on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

You must stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

! After switching off the ignition, carefully open the bonnet and check the coolant level.

i For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Checking

After driving for a few minutes, the temperature and pressure in the cooling system increase.

To top up the level:

► wait at least one hour for the engine to cool,

► unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop,

► when the pressure has dropped, remove the cap,

► top up the level to the "MAX" mark.

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Be aware of the risk of scalding when topping up the coolant. Do not fill above the maximum level (indicated on the reservoir).

Engine oil level indicator

(Depending on version)

On versions fitted with an electric gauge, the engine oil level status is displayed on the instrument panel for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, at the same time as the servicing information.

The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

With digital instrument panel

The conformity of the engine oil level can be monitored by pressing the "**Check**" button in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

With LCD symbols and LCD text or matrix instrument panel

Oil level correct

This is indicated by a message on the instrument panel.

Low oil level

This is indicated by a message on the instrument panel.
If a low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Oil gauge malfunction

This is indicated by the display of a message on the instrument panel.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a malfunction of the electric gauge, the oil level is no longer monitored.
If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located in the engine compartment.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

AdBlue® range indicators (BlueHDi)

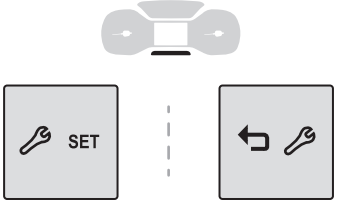
The Diesel BlueHDi engines are equipped with a system that associates the SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) emissions control system and the Diesel particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases. They cannot function without AdBlue® fluid.
When the level of AdBlue® falls below the reserve level (between 1,500 and 0 miles (2,400 and 0 km)), a warning lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on and an estimate of the distance that can be travelled before engine starting is prevented is displayed in the instrument panel.

The engine starting prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty. It is then no longer possible to start the engine until the minimum level of AdBlue® has been topped up.

Manual display of driving range

While the driving range is greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km), it is not displayed automatically.

With LCD symbols and LCD text/matrix instrument panel



► Press this button to temporarily display the driving range.

With digital instrument panel

You can view the range information by pressing the "**Check**" button in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Actions required related to a lack of AdBlue®

The following warning lamps light up when the quantity of AdBlue® is below the reserve level: driving range of 1,500 miles (2,400 km). Together with the warning lamps, messages regularly remind you of the need to top up to avoid engine starting being prevented. Refer to the **Warning and indicator lamps** section for details of the messages displayed.

> For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi)** and in particular on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

With 1.6 BlueHDi (Euro 6.1) engines

Warning/ indicator lamps on	Action	Remaining range
AdBlue	Top up as soon as possible.	Between 1,500 miles and 375 miles (2,400 km and 600 km)
AdBlue	**A top-up is vital**, there is a risk that the engine will be prevented from starting.	Between 375 miles and 0 miles (600 km and 0 km)
AdBlue	To be able to restart the engine, add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.	0 miles (km)

With 1.5 BlueHDi (Euro 6.2/6.3) engines

Warning/ indicator lamps on	Action	Remaining range
AdBlue	Top up.	Between 1,500 miles and 500 miles (2,400 km and 800 km)
AdBlue	Top up as soon as possible.	Between 500 miles and 62 miles (800 km and 100 km)
AdBlue	**A top-up is vital**, there is a risk that the engine will be prevented from starting.	Between 62 miles and 0 miles (100 km and 0 km)
AdBlue	To be able to restart the engine, add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.	0 miles (km)

Malfunction of the SCR emissions control system

Malfunction detection

AdBlue	If a malfunction is detected, these warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of an "**Emissions control fault**" or "**NO START IN**" message.

The alert is triggered while driving when the fault is detected for the first time, and thereafter when switching on the ignition for subsequent

journeys, for as long as the cause of the fault persists.

If the fault is temporary, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnostic checks of the SCR emissions control system.

Malfunction confirmed during the permitted driving phase (between 685 miles and 0 miles (1,100 km and 0 km))

If the fault indication is still displayed permanently after 31 miles (50 km) of driving, the fault in the SCR system is confirmed.
The AdBlue warning lamp flashes and a message is displayed ("**Emissions control fault: starting prevented in X miles (kms)**" or "**NO START IN X miles (kms)**"), indicating the driving range in miles or kilometres.
While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds. The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.
You can continue driving for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the **engine starting prevention** system is triggered.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Starting prevented

Every time the ignition is switched on, the message "**Emissions control fault: Starting prevented**" or "**NO START IN**" is displayed.

To restart the engine
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

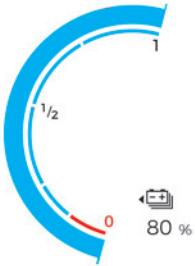
Power indicator (Electric)

CHARGE
Traction battery charging during deceleration and braking.
ECO
Moderate energy consumption and optimised driving range.
POWER
Energy consumption by the drive train during acceleration.
NEUTRAL

When the ignition is switched on, the vehicle's electric drive train neither consumes nor generates energy; after sweeping over the indicator, the cursor returns to its "neutral" position: between ECO and CHARGE.

With the ignition off, opening the driver's door activates the indicator, which moves to the "neutral" position: between ECO and CHARGE.

Charge level indicator (Electric)



The traction battery's actual charge level and the remaining range are displayed continuously when the vehicle is started.

With the ignition off, opening the driver's door activates the indicator.

Associated warning lamps

Two successive alert levels indicate that the energy available has dropped to a low level:

1st level: Reserve

The state of charge of the traction battery is low.

Fixed and indicator in the red zone, accompanied by an audible signal.

► View the remaining range on the instrument panel.

► Put the vehicle on charge as soon as possible.

2nd level: Critical

The state of charge of the traction battery is critical.

Fixed, together with the reserve warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal.

► You must put the vehicle on charge.

! The remaining range is no longer calculated. The drive train power gradually decreases.
The heating and air conditioning are switched off (even if the thermal comfort consumption indicator is not at the "**ECO**" level).

Thermal comfort consumption indicator (Electric)

(Depending on version)

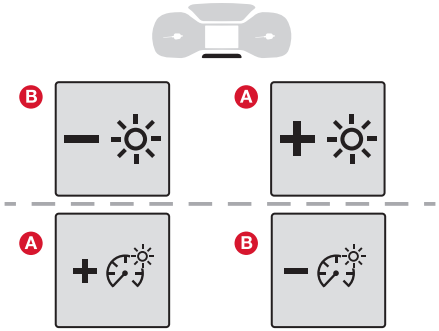
The gauge shows the consumption of the traction battery's electrical energy by the thermal comfort devices in the passenger compartment.
The devices in question are the heating and air conditioning systems.
This equipment can be used:
– If the vehicle is not plugged in, when the **READY** lamp is lit.
– If the vehicle is plugged in, when the ignition is switched on ("Lounge" mode).
Selecting **ECO** mode limits the performance of some of this equipment. The thermal comfort consumption indicator then moves into the "**ECO**" zone.

i To quickly heat or cool the passenger compartment, feel free to temporarily select the maximum heating or cooling setting.
When the heating is on maximum, the gauge on the thermal comfort consumption indicator is in the **MAX** zone. When the air conditioning is on maximum, it stays in the **ECO** zone.
Excessive use of thermal comfort equipment, particularly at low speed, can significantly decrease the vehicle's range.
Remember to optimise equipment settings upon achieving the desired level of comfort, and adjust them if necessary whenever you start the vehicle.
After an extended period without using the heating, you may notice a slight odour during the first few minutes of use.

Lighting dimmer

This control lets you manually adjust the brightness of the instrument panel according to the exterior light level.

With LCD symbols and LCD text/matrix instrument panel



With the lamps on (not in the AUTO position) , press button **A** to increase the brightness of the lighting, or button **B** to decrease it.
Release the button when the desired brightness is reached.

With digital instrument panel

With BLUETOOTH touch screen audio system

► Press on the **Settings** menu.

► Select "**Display**".

► Adjust the brightness by pressing the buttons.

You can also switch off the screen:

► Select "**Turn off screen**".

The screen goes off completely.

► Press the screen again (anywhere on its surface) to activate it.

With CITROËN Connect Radio

► Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.

► Select "**Brightness**".

► Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the slider.

The settings are applied immediately.

► Press outside the settings window to exit.

You can also switch off the screen:

► Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.

► Select "**Dark**".

The screen goes off completely.

► Press the screen again (anywhere on its surface) to turn it on.

With CITROËN Connect Nav

With the lamps switched on:

► Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.

► Select "**OPTIONS**".

► Select "**Screen configuration**".

► Select the "**Brightness**" tab.

► Adjust the instrument panel and screen brightness by using the arrows or moving the slider.

OK ► Press this button to save and exit.

You can also switch off the screen:

► Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.

► Select "**Turn off screen**".

The screen goes off completely.

► Press the screen again (anywhere on its surface) to turn it on.

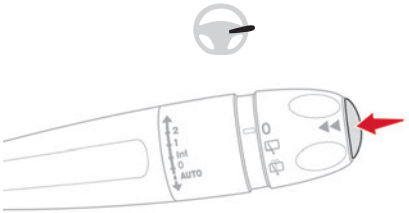
Trip computer

Displays information related to the current trip (range, fuel consumption, average speed, etc.).

Information display

Details are displayed successively.

– Trip mileage.
– Range.
– Current fuel consumption.
– Average speed.
– Stop & Start time counter.
– Information from the speed limit recognition system.



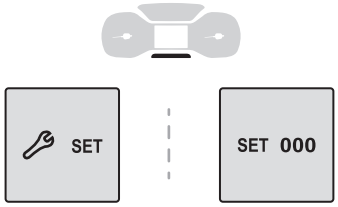
► Press the button located on the end of the **wiper control stalk**.

► Or press the thumbwheel on the steering wheel.

Trip reset

The reset is performed when the trip counter is displayed.

► Press the button on the end of the **wiper control stalk** for more than two seconds.
► Press the knob on the **steering wheel** for more than two seconds.



► Press this button for more than 2 seconds.

Definitions

Range

(miles or km)
(Traction battery charge level percentage) (Electric)
/ Distance that can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (based on the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled) (Petrol or Diesel).
Actual traction battery charge level and remaining range (Electric).
This value may vary following a change in driving style or terrain, leading to a significant change in current fuel consumption.
Vehicle with Petrol or Diesel engine:
When the range falls below 19 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed.
After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 62 miles (100 km).
Dashes appearing permanently in place of numbers while driving indicates a malfunction. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Vehicle with Electric motor:
Two successive alert levels indicate that the energy available has dropped to a low level.
For more information on the **Indicators**, and in particular the **Charge level indicator (Electric)**, refer to the corresponding section.

Current consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)
(miles/kWh or kWh/100 km or km/kWh) (Electric)
/ Calculated during the last few seconds.
This function is only displayed at speeds above 19 mph (30 km/h) (Petrol).

Average consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)
(miles/kWh or kWh/100 km or km/kWh) (Electric)
/ Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Average speed

(mph or km/h)
Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Distance travelled

(miles or km)
Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Stop & Start time counter

(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)
If your vehicle is fitted with the Stop & Start function, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.
The time counter is reset each time the ignition is switched on.

Touch screen BLUETOOTH audio system

This system gives access to the following elements:
– Audio system and telephone controls and display of related information.
– Vehicle function and equipment setting menus.

– Air conditioning system controls (depending on version).

For safety reasons, always stop the vehicle before performing operations that require sustained attention.
Some functions are not accessible while driving.

Recommendations

Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.
Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands.
Use a soft, clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

Main controls

With the ignition off: system start-up
With the engine running: mute

Left knob: volume adjustment (rotation)/ direct access to the **Media** menu (press)
Right knob: air flow adjustment (rotation)/direct access to the **Climate** menu (press)

Access to menus

Return to the previous screen or confirm

After a few moments with no action on the second page, the first page is displayed automatically.

Menus

Radio

Media

Climate
Settings for temperature, air flow, etc.
For more information on **Manual air conditioning**, refer to the corresponding section.

Telephone

Driving
Activation, deactivation and settings for certain functions.

Settings
Main system settings.

For more information about the menus, refer to the sections describing the audio and telematics systems.

Touch screen

This system gives access to the following elements:
– Permanent display of the time and outside temperature (a blue warning lamp appears if there is a risk of ice).
– Vehicle functions and equipment setting menus.
– Audio system and telephone controls and display of related information.
– Display of visual manoeuvring aid functions
– Internet services and display of related information.
– Navigation system controls and display of related information (depending on version).

For safety reasons, always stop the vehicle before performing operations that require sustained attention.
Some functions are not accessible while driving.

Recommendations

This screen uses capacitive sensing technology.
– Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.
– Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands.
– Use a soft, clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

Principles

► Use the buttons on each side of the touch screen to access the menus, then press the buttons that appear on the touch screen.
Some menus may display across two pages: press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the second page.

After a few moments with no action on the second page, the first page is displayed automatically.

To deactivate/activate a function, select "**OFF**" or "**ON**".

Configuring a function

Access to additional information on the function

OK Confirm

Return to the previous page or confirm

Menus

Press the touch screen with three fingers to show all of the menu buttons.

For more information about the menus, refer to the sections describing the audio and telematics systems.

Radio/Media

Navigation (Depending on equipment)

Driving or Vehicle (Depending on equipment)

Activation, deactivation and settings for certain functions.

The functions are organised in 2 tabs: "**Driving functions**" and "**Vehicle settings**".

Telephone

Applications

Display of available connected services.

Energy (with CITROËN Connect Nav)

Access the specific Electric functions (energy flow, consumption statistics, deferred charge) organised in the corresponding 3 tabs.

or

Settings

Main settings for the audio system and touch screen.

Audio system on/off

Volume adjustment/mute

Upper bar

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper bar of the touch screen:

– Time and outside temperature (a blue warning lamp appears if there is a risk of ice).

– Reminder of information from the **RadioMedia** and **Telephone** menus and navigation instructions (depending on equipment).

– Notifications.

– Access to the **Settings**.

Energy menu

This menu is only available with CITROËN Connect Nav.

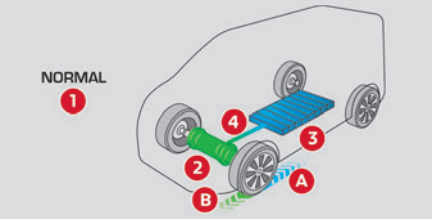
Depending on version, this is accessible either:

– directly, by pressing the button near the touch screen.

– via the **Applications** menu.

Flow

The page displays a real-time representation of the electric drive train's operation.



1. Active driving mode
2. Electric motor
3. Estimated traction battery charge level
4. Energy flows

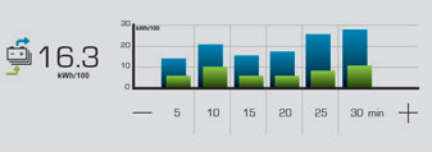
The energy flows have a specific colour for each type of driving:

A. Blue: energy consumption

B. Green: energy recovery

Statistics

This page shows electrical energy consumption statistics.



– Blue bar chart: directly consumed energy supplied by the traction battery.

– Green bar chart: energy recovered during deceleration and braking, used to recharge the battery.
The average result for the current trip is stated in kWh/100 km.
► You can change the displayed time scale by pressing the **-** or **+** buttons.

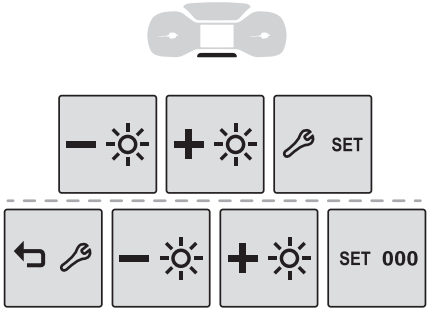
> A current trip is any trip of more than 20 minutes without switching off the ignition.

Charging

This page allows you to programme deferred charging.
For more information on **Charging the traction battery (Electric)**, refer to the corresponding section.

Setting the date and time

Without audio system



Set the date and time via the instrument panel display.

► Press and hold this button.

► Press one of these buttons to select the setting to be changed.

► Briefly press this button to confirm.

► Press one of these buttons to change the setting and confirm again to record the change.

> For more information on setting the date and time with the **Touch screen BLUETOOTH audio system**, **CITROËN Connect Radio** or **CITROËN Connect Nav**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Electronic key with remote control function and built-in key,

i If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Start system has been left inside the vehicle, central locking will not take place. However, if the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be activated after 45 seconds.

i If the vehicle is unlocked but the doors or tailgate are not subsequently opened, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be reactivated automatically.

i Automatic door mirror folding and unfolding can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle, even for a short time, without taking the Keyless Entry and Start system's electronic key with you.
Be aware of the risk of theft of the vehicle if the key is present in one of the defined areas while the vehicle is unlocked.

! To preserve the battery charge in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery, the "hands-free" functions are set to hibernation mode after 21 days without use.
To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the electronic key in the reader.
For more information on starting with the Keyless Entry and Start system, refer to the corresponding section.

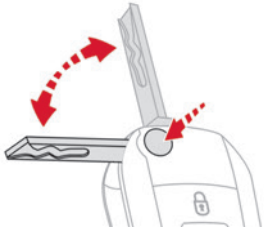
i **Electrical interference**
The electronic key may not work if it is close to an electronic device (e.g. mobile telephone (switched on or on standby), laptop computer, strong magnetic fields). If this occurs, move the electronic key away from the electronic device.

Remote control key

This allows the central locking or unlocking of the vehicle using the door lock or from a distance.
It also allows the vehicle to be located, the fuel filler cap and charging flap to be opened and closed and the engine to be started or switched off, as well as providing protection against theft.

i The remote control buttons are not active with the ignition switched on.

Unfolding / Folding the key



► Press this button to unfold or fold the key.

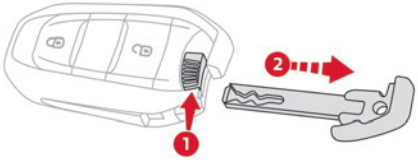
! The remote control may be damaged if you do not press the button.

Keyless Entry and Start

This allows the central locking or unlocking of the vehicle from a distance.
It is also used to locate and start the vehicle, as well as providing protection against theft.

Integral key

This is used to lock and unlock the vehicle when the remote control cannot operate:
– remote control battery discharged, vehicle battery discharged or disconnected, etc.
– vehicle located in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.

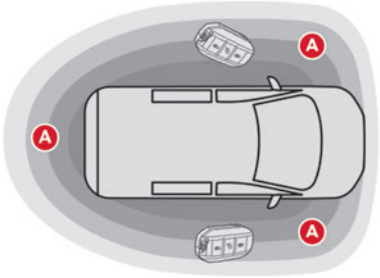


► Keep this button **1** pulled across to remove the key **2** from the device.

ℹ If the alarm is activated, the audible signal triggered on opening a door with the key (integral with the remote control) will stop when the ignition is switched on.

! Once the built-in key is ejected, always keep it with you to be able to carry out the corresponding back-up procedures.

"Keyless Entry and Start" on your person



It allows the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle, while carrying the remote control on your person in the recognition zone "**A**".

ℹ In the ignition on (accessories) position, with the "START/STOP" button, the hands-free function is deactivated and it is impossible to open the doors.
For more information on **Starting/switching off the engine** and in particular the "ignition on" position, refer to the corresponding section.

Locating the vehicle

This function helps you to spot your vehicle from a distance, with the vehicle locked:
– The direction indicators flash for approximately 10 seconds.
– The courtesy lamps come on.

► Press this button.

Remote operation of lighting

A short press on this button switches on the lighting remotely (lighting of sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps and number plate lamps).
A second press on the button before the end of the timed period cancels the remote lighting.

Advice

! **Remote control**
The remote control is a sensitive, high-frequency device; avoid handling it in your pocket, due to the risk of unintentionally unlocking the vehicle.
Avoid pressing the remote control buttons while out of range of the vehicle, due to the risk of rendering the remote control inoperative. It would then be necessary to reset it.
The remote control does not work when the key is in the ignition switch, even when the ignition is switched off.

! **Anti-theft protection**
Do not modify the electronic vehicle immobiliser, as this might result in malfunctions.
For vehicles with a key ignition switch, remember to remove the key and turn the steering wheel to engage the steering lock.

! **Locking the vehicle**
Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the passenger compartment in an emergency.
As a safety precaution, remove the key from the ignition or take the electronic key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

Purchasing a second-hand vehicle
Have the key codes memorised by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones able to start the vehicle.

Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt, etc.) on the inner surface of the door handle may affect detection.
If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, etc.) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

Total or selective unlocking

Complete unlocking unlocks **all** the vehicle's doors (front, side and rear).

Selective unlocking unlocks either the **cabin** doors, or the doors of the **loading area** (side and rear).

The separation of the **cabin** and **loading area** unlocking is a security measure.
It is used to lock out access to the part of the vehicle in which you are not present.

Activation/Deactivation

With button

► To **activateselective** unlocking between the **cab** and the **loading area** or to **deactivate** selective unlocking and return to **total** unlocking mode, switch on the ignition and press this button for more than two seconds.

An audible signal and, depending on equipment, a display message, confirm that the request has been acknowledged.

Without button

The selectivity between the **driver's door** and the **other doors** and the **boot** is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

Complete unlocking

With the key

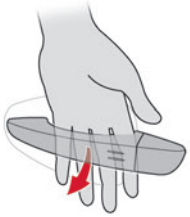
► To **completely** unlock the vehicle, insert the key in the lock then turn it towards the front of the vehicle.
► Then pull the handle to open the door.
If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm is not deactivated. Opening a door will trigger the alarm, which can be stopped by switching the ignition on.

Using the remote control

► Press one of these buttons to unlock the vehicle.

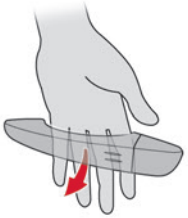
Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for around 2 seconds.
At the same time, depending on your version, the door mirrors unfold.

With Keyless Entry and Start on your person



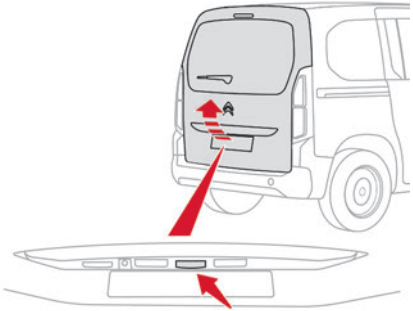
► To unlock the vehicle, with the remote control on your person in recognition zone **A**, pass your hand behind one of the door handles (front door(s), manual sliding side door(s) or side-hinged doors).
► Pull the handle to open the corresponding door.

With side-hinged doors



► To unlock the vehicle, remote control in the recognition zone **A**, run a hand behind the handle of the side-hinged door.
► Then pull the handle to open it.

With tailgate



► To unlock the vehicle, with the remote control in recognition zone **A**, press the tailgate release control.
► Raise the tailgate.

Selective unlocking

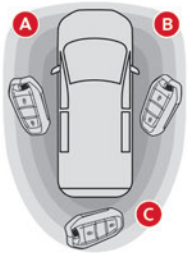
Using the remote control

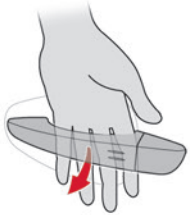
► To unlock just the **passenger compartment** doors, press this button once.
► To unlock the side and rear doors in the **loading area**, press this button a second time.
or

► Press this button on the remote control to unlock only the **loading area**.

> Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for around 2 seconds.
> At the same time, depending on your version, the door mirrors unfold.

With Keyless Entry and Start on your person





► To unlock the **cabin** alone, with the remote control on your person in recognition zone **A**, pass your hand behind the handle of the **driver's** door.

► To unlock the **cabin** alone, with the remote control on your person in recognition zone **B**, pass your hand behind the handle of the **driver's** door.
► Then pull the handle to open the cabin.

> The door locking state of the **loading area** remains unchanged.

► To unlock the **loading area** alone, with the remote control on your person in the recognition zone **A**, **B** or **C**, pass your hand behind a handle of the left side door, right side door or the rear door (the left-hand hinged door or the tailgate).
► Then pull the handle to open the loading area.

> Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold only when the cabin is unlocked, the alarm is deactivated.

Unlocking

> Unlocking is signalled by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.
> Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold and the alarm is deactivated.

With the key

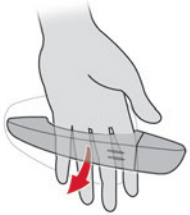
► To **completely** unlock the vehicle, insert the key in the lock then turn it towards the front of the vehicle.
► Then pull the handle to open the door.

If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm is not deactivated. Opening a door will trigger the alarm, which can be stopped by switching the ignition on.

Using the remote control

► Press this button to unlock the vehicle.

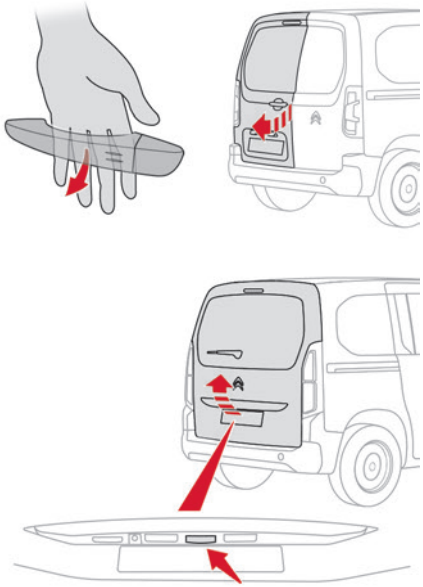
With Keyless Entry and Start on your person



► To unlock the vehicle, with the remote control on your person in recognition zone **A**, pass your hand behind one of the door handles (front door(s), manual sliding side door(s) or side-hinged doors).

► To unlock the vehicle, with the remote control on your person in recognition zone **A**, pass your hand behind one of the door handles (front door(s)).
► Pull the handle to open the corresponding door.

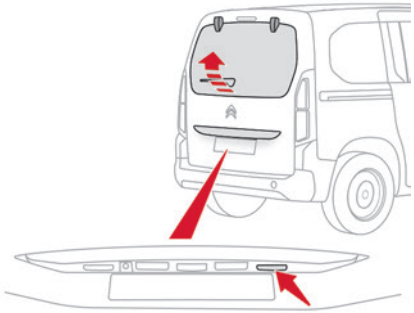
With side-hinged doors/tailgate



► To unlock the vehicle, with the remote control in the recognition zone **A, pass** your hand behind the side-hinged door handle or press the tailgate unlocking control.

► Pull the side-hinged door handle or raise the tailgate.

With an opening rear screen in the tailgate



► With the Keyless Entry and Start on your person, to unlock the vehicle, press the tailgate opening rear screen unlocking control. The screen will open slightly; then, lift it up to open it.

Locking

! Ensure that no person or object prevents the correct closing of the windows.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

i The locking/deadlocking is signalled by the fixed illumination of the direction indicators for about two seconds.
Depending on your version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

i If your vehicle is so equipped, pressing and holding the locking button closes the windows. The window stops in position when you release the button.

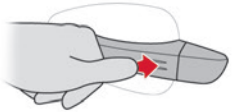
With the key

► To lock the vehicle, insert the key in the lock then turn it towards the rear of the vehicle.

With the remote control

► To lock the vehicle, press this button.

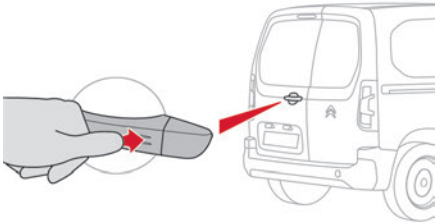
With Keyless Entry and Start on your person



► To lock the vehicle, with the remote control in recognition zone **A**, press the markings on one of the front or rear door handles.

► To lock the vehicle, with the remote control in recognition zone **A**, press the markings on one of the front door handles.

With side-hinged doors



► To lock the vehicle, with the remote control in recognition zone **A**, press the left-hand door locking control.

! Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency.
As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle, even for a short time, without taking the remote control with you.

If a door is not properly closed (except the right-hand door with side-hinged rear doors):

– when the vehicle is stationary and engine running, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a warning message for a few seconds,
– when the vehicle is moving (at speeds above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a warning message for a few seconds.

Deadlocking

! Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivate the manual central control button. The horn remains operational.
Never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

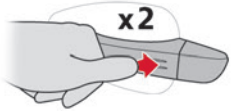
With the key

► To deadlock the vehicle, turn the key in the driver's door lock towards the rear of the vehicle.
► Then **within five seconds**, turn the key towards the rear again.

With the remote control

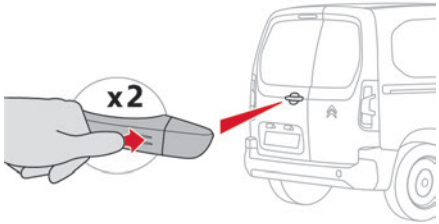
► To deadlock the vehicle, press this button.
► Then press this button again **within five seconds after locking**.

With Keyless Entry and Start on your person



► To lock the vehicle, with the remote control in recognition zone **A**, press the markings on one of the front or rear door handles.
► To deadlock the vehicle, press the markings again **within five seconds.**

With side-hinged doors



► To lock the vehicle, with the remote control in recognition zone **A**, press the left-hand door locking control.
► To deadlock the vehicle, press the control again **within five seconds**.

Back-up procedures

Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Go to a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.
The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code, enabling a new key to be ordered.

Complete unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key

Use this procedure in the following situations:
– Remote control battery discharged.
– Remote control malfunction.
– Vehicle battery discharged.
– Vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.
In the first case, change the remote control battery.
In the second case, reinitialise the remote control.
Refer to the corresponding sections.
► Insert the key into the front left-hand door lock.
► Turn the key towards the front/rear to unlock/lock the vehicle.
► Turn the key towards the rear again within 5 seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will not be activated when locking with the key.
If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds when the door is opened; switch on the ignition to stop it.

If the vehicle is unlocked with the key in the lock **after locking it with the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Start system**, **all doors and the boot** are unlocked.
If the vehicle is unlocked with the key in the lock **after locking it with the key**, only the doors (front door and sliding side door(s)) are unlocked. The side-hinged doors and tailgate are not unlocked. Switching on the ignition unlocks them.

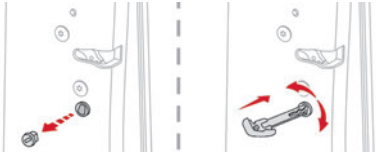
Central locking not functioning

Use these procedures in the following cases:
– Central locking malfunction.
– Battery disconnected or discharged.

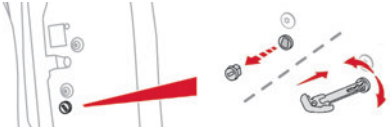
In the event of a malfunction of the central locking system, the battery must be disconnected to ensure that the vehicle is locked fully.

Locking part of the vehicle (front door/sliding side door/side-hinged doors)

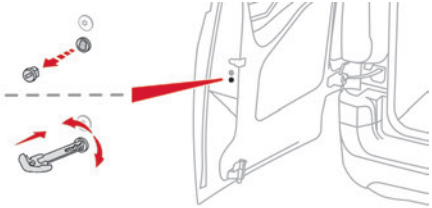
► If a **sliding side door** or **side-hinged doors** are fitted to your vehicle, check that the electric child lock is not activated.
► Open the door.



Front door



Sliding side door



Side-hinged doors

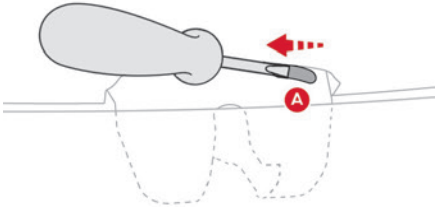
► Remove the cap located on the edge of the door.
► Insert the built-in key into the latch (without forcing it) and then **turn** the assembly.
► Remove the key and refit the cap.
► Close the door(s) and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked correctly.

Unlocking of one part of the vehicle (front passenger door/sliding side door/side-hinged doors)

► Use the interior opening control.
or
► With **side-hinged doors**, insert the built-in key into the (left-hand) door lock, then turn it.

For more information on the **Child lock** on a **sliding side door** or **side-hinged doors**, refer to the corresponding section.

Unlocking the tailgate



► From inside the vehicle, insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** on the lock to unlock the tailgate.
► Move the latch to the left.

If the battery is discharged and your vehicle is equipped with a tailgate and an Extenso Cab, you will not be able to access the loading area.
Replace the battery to regain access.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

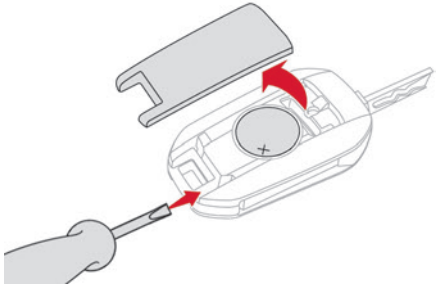
In the event of a malfunction or if you experience difficulty opening or closing the tailgate, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay, to avoid the issue deteriorating and prevent any risk of the tailgate dropping, potentially causing serious injury.

Changing the battery

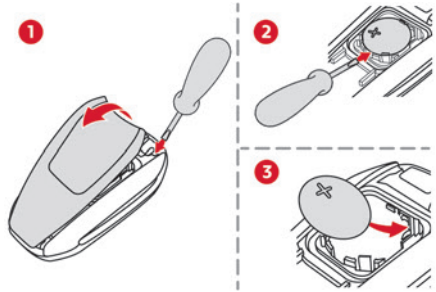
If the battery is flat, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.

Battery type: CR2032/3 volts.

Without Keyless Entry and Start



With Keyless Entry and Start



► Unclip the cover by inserting a small screwdriver in the slot and lift the cover.
► Remove the flat battery from its housing.
► Put the new battery in place, respecting the polarity. Start by inserting it into the contacts located in the corner, then clip the cover onto the unit.
► Reinitialise the remote control.
For more information on **Reinitialising the remote control**, refer to the corresponding section.

Do not throw remote control batteries away, as they contain metals that are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved disposal point.

This equipment contains a button type battery.
Do not swallow the battery. Risk of chemical burns!
Swallowing the battery can cause serious internal burning in only 2 hours and can be fatal.
If batteries have been swallowed or inserted into a part of the body, seek immediate medical advice.
Keep new and used batteries out of the reach of children.
If the battery compartment does not close properly, stop using the product and keep it out of the reach of children.

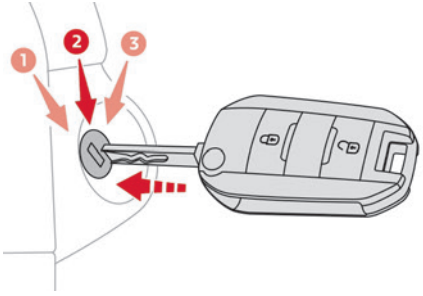
Risk of explosion if the battery is replaced with an incorrect type!
Replace the battery with the same type.

! Risk of explosion or leaking of inflammable liquid or gas!
Do not use in/store in/place in an environment where the temperature is extremely high or where the pressure is extremely low due to very high altitude.
Do not try to burn, crush or cut a used battery.

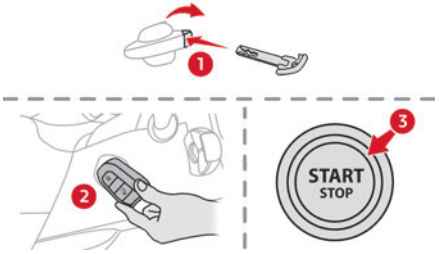
Reinitialising the remote control

Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.

Without Keyless Entry and Start



► Switch the ignition off.
► Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**.
► Immediately press the closed padlock button for a few seconds.
► Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.
The remote control is now fully operational again.



► Insert the mechanical key (incorporated into the remote control) into the lock to open the vehicle.
► Place the electronic key against the back-up reader on the steering column and hold it there until the ignition is switched on.
► **With a manual gearbox,** place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
► **With an automatic gearbox,** while in mode **P**, depress the brake pedal.
► Switch on the ignition by pressing the "**START/STOP**" button.
If the fault persists after reinitialisation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Central locking / unlocking

This function enables the doors to be locked or unlocked simultaneously from inside the vehicle.

i **When locking/deadlocking from the outside**
When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the indicator lamp flashes and the button is deactivated.
► After normal locking, pull one of the interior door controls to unlock the vehicle.
► After deadlocking, you must use the remote control, the "Keyless Entry and Start" system or the built-in key to unlock the vehicle.

Manual mode

► Press this button to lock / unlock the vehicle.

! Driving with the doors locked could make it difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

If one of the doors is open, the central locking from the inside does not function. This is signalled by a mechanical noise from the locks.
If the boot is open, only the locking of the other doors is carried out. The indicator lamp in the button remains off.

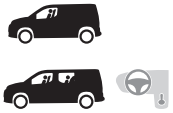
When locking from inside, the door mirrors do not fold.

The indicator lamp also goes off when unlocking one or more accesses.

Automatic mode

This is the automatic central locking of the vehicle when driving, also called anti-intrusion security.
For more information on **Anti-intrusion security**, refer to the corresponding section.

Locking/unlocking the loading area



This button is unavailable if the vehicle has been locked or deadlocked from outside (using the key, remote control or Keyless Entry and Start, depending on equipment) or if any of the doors are still open.

For more information on the **Key**, and, in particular, on programming selective locking for the loading area, refer to the corresponding section.

Manual mode

► With complete unlocking activated, press this button to lock (indicator lamp comes on)/unlock (indicator lamp goes off) the **vehicle**.
► With selective unlocking activated, press this button to lock (indicator lamp comes on)/unlock (indicator lamp goes off) the **loading area**.

Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

The indicator lamp goes off when unlocking one or more doors of the **loading area**.
With the ignition off and the vehicle fully locked, the indicator lamp goes off for energy economy reasons.

Automatic mode

The **loading area** is always locked when driving.

To deactivate this automatic locking, go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Anti-intrusion security

This system allows automatic simultaneous locking of the doors and boot as soon as the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

Operation

If one of the doors or the boot is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.

This is signalled by the sound of the locks rebounding, accompanied by illumination of this warning lamp in the instrument panel, an audible signal and the display of an alert message.

Activation/Deactivation

You can activate or deactivate this function permanently.

► With the ignition on, press the central locking button until an audible signal is triggered and a corresponding message of confirmation is displayed.

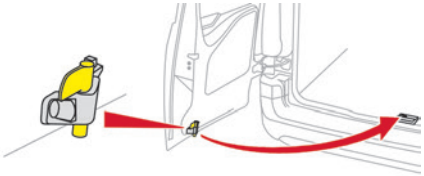
The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

! Driving with the doors locked may render access by the emergency services to the interior difficult in an emergency.

i **Carrying long or voluminous objects**
If you want to drive with the boot open, you should press the central locking button to lock the doors. Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the locks will rebound and the alerts mentioned above will appear.
Pressing the central locking button unlocks the vehicle.
Above 6 mph (10 km/h), this unlocking is temporary.

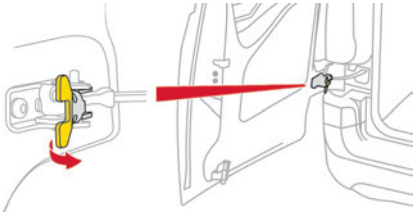
Side-hinged doors

Keeping the left-hand door closed with the right-hand door open



i It is possible to drive with the right-hand door open, to enable the transportation of long loads.
The **left-hand** door is kept closed by the distinctive "yellow" lock, positioned at the base of the door.
This closed door must not be used to retain loads.
Driving with the right-hand door open is a special dispensation. Please comply with the usual safety instructions on how to warn other drivers.

Opening to approximately 180°



If fitted to your vehicle, a check strap system allows the doors to be opened from about 90° to about 180°.

► Pull the yellow control when the door is open.

The check strap will engage again automatically on closing.

General recommendations for the sliding side doors

! Doors must only be operated when the vehicle is stationary.
For your safety and that of your passengers, as well as for correct operation of the doors, you are strongly advised not to drive with a door open.
Always check that it is safe to operate the door and in particular, be sure not to leave children or animals near the door controls without supervision.

The audible warning, the lighting of the "door open" warning lamp and the message on the screen are there to remind you. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop if you want to deactivate this warning.
Lock the vehicle when you use an automatic car wash.

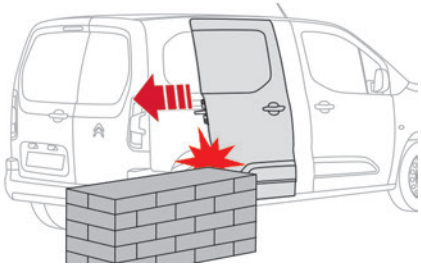
! Before opening or closing and while moving doors, ensure that no person, animal or object is in the door frame or any other position that would block the desired movement, inside or outside the vehicle.
If this advice is not followed, injuries or damage may occur if any part of a person or an object is trapped or caught.

! Take care not to block the guide space on the floor so that the door can slide correctly.
For safety and functional reasons, do not drive with the sliding side door open.

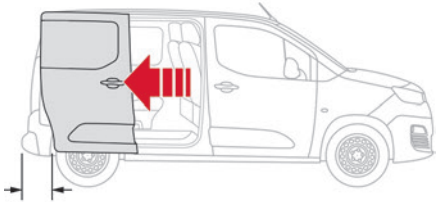
i To hold the sliding side door in the open position, open the door fully to engage the latch (located at the bottom of the door).

i To hold the sliding side door in the open position, open the door fully to engage the latch (located at the bottom of the door).

Doors and door clearances

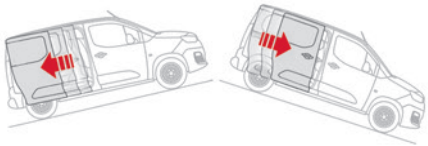


When open, a door projects beyond the body. Allow adequate clearance when parking alongside walls, lamp-posts, high pavements, etc.



i When open, a door never projects beyond the rear bumper.

On a steep slope

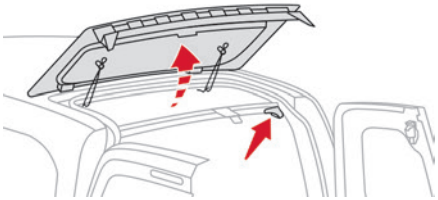


Take care when opening doors while the vehicle is on a slope facing uphill. The sloping terrain could cause the door to open more quickly than usual.
On a steep slope, manually guide the side door to help it to close.
If the vehicle is on a slope facing downhill, the door may not stay open, instead closing **suddenly**, with a risk of injury. Always hold the door to ensure that it does not close unexpectedly.

! On a steep slope, the door's weight may cause it to move, opening or closing **suddenly** as a result.
Avoid leaving the vehicle unsupervised on a steep slope with one or more doors open. If this advice is not followed, injuries or damage may occur if a person or an object is trapped or caught.

Rear roof flap

This roof flap at the rear is compatible only with side-hinged doors.



To open the rear roof flap:
– Lift the black paddle of the toggle.
– Relax the toggle by pressing on the rear roof flap (downwards) then release the hook.
– Lift the rear roof flap.
– Move past the point of resistance to lock the rear roof flap with the support props.

! Never drive without the props in place.

To close the rear roof flap:
– Check that the support bar is properly secured.
– Lower the rear roof flap.
– While pressing on the rear roof flap (downwards), take the two spring rings and then place the hook in its housing.
– Lower the black paddle to lock the rear roof flap.
Locking the rear roof flap holds it firmly against the seal, ensuring watertight sealing with no noise.

Support bar

The vehicle is equipped with a support bar for transporting long loads, after opening the rear roof flap.
► Fold back the support bar by lifting the lever.
► Guide it to the door pillar.
► Support the long loads to be transported, lift them and reposition the support bar with one hand.
► Ensure that it is secured correctly by pressing the handle downwards past the point of resistance and lash the load securely.
The side supports can be used as hooking points.

i The rear bumper has been reinforced to serve as a step when entering the vehicle.

! Never fasten a load to the roof flap.

! Never drive without the support bar in place.
The rear doors will only lock when the support bar is installed.
When the roof flap is open, take care when driving where height is restricted.
Never rest loads directly on the rear doors.
Comply with the usual indications for warning other drivers.
Only use the roof flap on short trips.

Alarm

System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins.

! **Self-protection function**
The system checks for any malfunction in its components.
The alarm is triggered if the battery, button or siren wiring is disconnected or damaged.
For all work on the alarm system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Exterior perimeter

The system checks whether the vehicle is opened.
The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open one of the doors or the bonnet.

Volumetric

(without partition)

The system checks for any variation in volume in the passenger compartment.
The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

(with partition)

The system only checks for a variation in volume inside the **cab**.
The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window or enters the vehicle's **cab**.
It will not be triggered if someone enters the **loading area.**

> i If your vehicle is fitted with an Additional heating/ventilation system, interior volumetric monitoring is not compatible with it. For more information on the **Additional heating/ventilation system**, refer to the corresponding section.

Anti-tilt

The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle.
The alarm is triggered if the vehicle is lifted or moved.

> i When the vehicle is parked, the alarm will not be triggered if the vehicle is knocked.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation

► Switch off the ignition and exit the vehicle.
► Lock the vehicle using the remote control or with the "Keyless Entry and Start" system.
The monitoring system is active: the red indicator lamp in the button flashes every second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.

> i Following an instruction to lock the vehicle, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds and the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring after 45 seconds.

> i If a door, the tailgate or the bonnet is not closed properly, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds at the same time as the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring.

Deactivation

► Press the remote control unlocking button.
or
► Unlock the vehicle with the "Keyless Entry and Start" system.
The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

> i If the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or the boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is also reactivated automatically.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring to avoid the unwanted triggering of the alarm, in certain cases such as:
– Slightly open window or sunroof.
– Washing the vehicle.
– Changing a wheel.
– Towing the vehicle.
– Transport on a ship or ferry.

Deactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

► Switch off the ignition and within 10 seconds press the alarm button until its red indicator lamp is on fixed.
► Get out of the vehicle.

► Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Start" system.
Only the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated; the button's red indicator lamp flashes once every second.

> i To be taken into account, the deactivation must be carried out every time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

► Deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Start" system.
The indicator lamp in the button goes off.
► Reactivate all monitoring by locking the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Start" system.
The red indicator lamp in the button once again flashes every second.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.
Depending on the country of sale, certain monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times consecutively.
When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Start" system, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:
► Unlock the vehicle using the key in the front left-hand door lock.
► Open the door; the alarm is triggered.
► Switch on the ignition; this stops the alarm.
The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

► Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (built-in the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

Malfunction

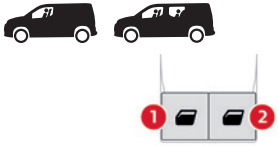
When the ignition is switched on, the fixed lighting of the red indicator lamp in the button indicates a system malfunction.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Automatic activation

(Depending on version)
The system is activated automatically 2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed.
► To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control or unlock the vehicle using the "Keyless Entry and Start" system.

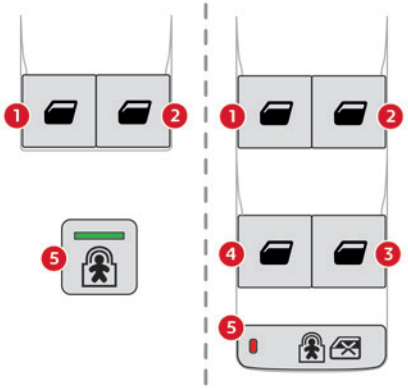
Electric windows

Type 1



1. Left-hand front.
2. Right-hand front.

Type 2



1. Left-hand front
2. Right-hand front
3. Right-hand rear (depending on version)
4. Left-hand rear (depending on version)
5. Deactivation of electric window controls located by rear seats (depending on version)

Manual operation

► To open/close the window, press/pull the switch without passing the point of resistance; the window stops as soon as the switch is released.

Automatic operation

(Depending on version)

► To open/close the window, press/pull the switch past its resistance point: the window opens/closes completely when the switch is released.

Operating the switch again stops the movement of the window.

> ℹ Window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after switching off the ignition or after locking the vehicle.
> After that time, the controls are disabled.
> To reactivate them, switch on the ignition or unlock the vehicle.

Anti-pinch

(Depending on version)

If the window meets an obstacle while rising, it stops and immediately partially lowers again.

Deactivating the rear controls for the rear electric windows

(Type 2)

For your children's safety, press control **5** to deactivate the controls for the rear electric windows, irrespective of their positions.

The red indicator lamp in the button comes on and a confirmation message is displayed.

The lamp will remain lit until the controls are reactivated.

The rear electric windows can still be controlled using the driver's controls.

Reinitialising the electric windows

After reconnecting the battery, or in the event of abnormal window movement, the anti-pinch function must be reinitialised.

The anti-pinch function is disabled during the following sequence of operations.

For each window:

► Lower the window fully, then raise it; it will rise in steps of a few centimetres each time the control is pressed. Repeat the operation until the window is fully closed.

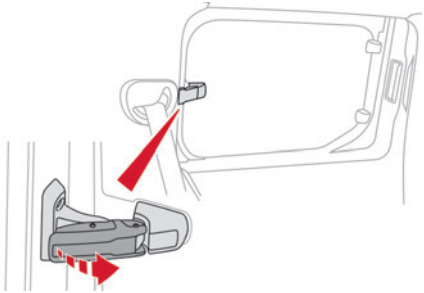
► Continue to pull the control for at least one second after the window reaches the closed position.

> ! If an electric window meets an obstacle during operation, the movement of the window must be reversed. To do this, press the relevant control.
> When the driver operates the passengers' electric window controls, it is important to ensure that nothing can prevent the window from closing properly.
> It is important to ensure that passengers use the electric windows correctly.
> Pay particular attention to children when operating the windows.

Be aware of passengers and/or other persons present when closing windows remotely using the electronic key.
Do not put your head or arms through the open windows when the vehicle is moving - risk of serious injury!

Tilting rear door windows

Opening



► Turn the lever outwards.
► Push it fully to secure the window in the open position.

Closing

► Pull the lever to release the window.
► Turn the lever fully inwards to secure the window in the closed position.

General recommendations for the seats

! For safety reasons, seat adjustments must only be made when the vehicle is stationary.

! Folding or unfolding the seat backrests must only be done with the vehicle stationary.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no person or object that might prevent the full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or of jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

! Do not place hard or heavy objects on the backrests forming a table. They could become dangerous projectiles in the event of sudden braking or a collision.
– Do not remove a head restraint without stowing it; secure it to a support inside the vehicle.
– Check that the seat belts remain accessible to the passenger and easy to fasten.
– Passengers must never take their seat without adjusting and fastening their seat belt.
– In row 3, be careful not to leave your feet under the row 2 seat while it is being tilted.
– When a row 3 seat is in the fully folded position, ensure that the strap is correctly hooked to the Top Tether fixing of the row 2 backrest: risk of unexpected tipping of the seat.

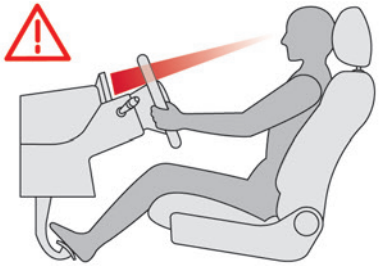
! Before carrying out the manoeuvres, check that nothing and no one is obstructing the moving elements and their locking.
To avoid sudden folding, take care to hold the backrest and support it until it is horizontal.
Never put your hand underneath the seat cushion to guide the seat downwards or upwards, you could get your fingers trapped.
Place your hand on the grip/strap (depending on equipment) at the top of the seat cushion.

! Please note: an incorrectly latched backrest compromises the safety of passengers in the event of sudden braking or an impact.
The contents of the boot may be thrown forward - risk of severe injury!

Front seats

Correct driving position

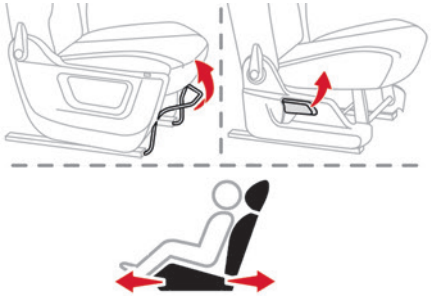
Before taking to the road and to make the most of the ergonomic layout of the instruments and controls, carry out these adjustments in the following order:
– head restraint height.
– seat backrest angle.
– seat cushion height.
– longitudinal seat position.
– steering wheel height and reach.
– rear view mirror and door mirrors.



! Once these adjustments have been made, check that the instrument panel can be viewed correctly from your driving position.

Adjustments

Longitudinal



► Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

Height

(driver only)

► If fitted to the vehicle, pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as necessary to obtain the position required.

> i For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

Tilting the backrest

► Push the control backwards then use your weight and your legs to adjust the backrest.

Lumbar

(driver only)

► Turn the knob to obtain the desired level of lumbar support.

Armrest

► To put the armrest in the vertical position, raise it until it locks into place.
► Lower the armrest to return it to the position for use.
The armrest can be removed from the passenger seat.

Removing the armrest

► Raise the armrest into the vertical position.

► Push the armrest shaft towards the backrest.
► While holding it in this position, rotate the armrest towards the rear.
► Pull the armrest to detach it from the backrest.

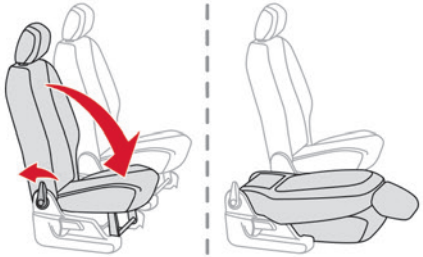
Refitting the armrest

► Slot the armrest into the backrest, ensuring that you align the bayonet lugs with the holes.
► Push the armrest shaft towards the backrest.
► While holding it in this position, rotate the armrest towards the front. The armrest is once again secured onto the backrest.

Storage compartment under the seat

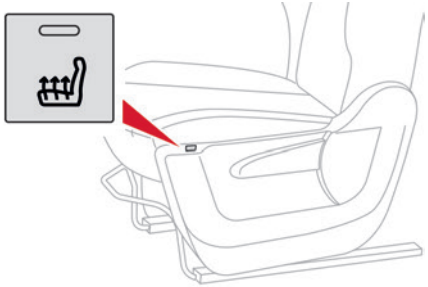
► Lift the passenger’s seat cushion to access the storage compartment.

Retractable position



► If the centre console inconveniences you, remove the passenger's seat armrest.
► Push the control rearwards fully to tilt and guide the assembly.
This position allows you to transport long loads inside the vehicle with the doors closed.
When retracted, the maximum permitted weight on the backrest is 50 kg.
► To reposition the seat cushion, raise the backrest until it locks in the raised position.

Heated seat control



► Approximately 30 seconds after starting the engine, press the control.
It can be activated when the outside temperature is below 20°C.
The temperature is controlled automatically.
Pressing again interrupts operation.

> ℹ If you press the control while the engine is not running, the request will be memorised for approximately 2 minutes.

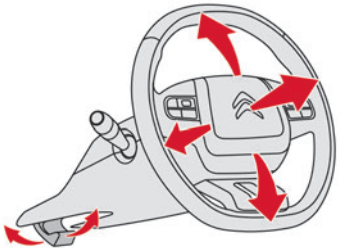
With the two-seat front bench seat, the driver's seat control switches the heating on or off for the bench seat’s outer seat.

> Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.
> Reduce the heating intensity as soon as possible.
> When the seat and passenger compartment have reached a satisfactory temperature,

switch the function off; reducing electrical consumption in turn decreases energy consumption.

! Prolonged use of heated seats is not recommended for people with sensitive skin.
There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (e.g. illness, taking medication).
To keep the heated pad intact and to prevent a short circuit:
– Do not place heavy or sharp objects on the seat.
– Do not kneel or stand on the seat.
– Do not spill liquids onto the seat.
– Never use the heating function if the seat is damp.

Steering wheel adjustment



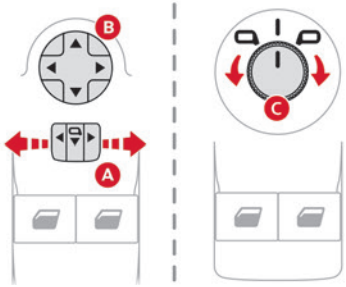
► **When stationary**, pull the control lever to release the steering wheel.
► Adjust the height and reach.
► Lower the control lever to lock the steering wheel.

! As a safety precaution, these operations must only be carried out while the vehicle is stationary.

Mirrors

Door mirrors

Adjustment



► Move control **A** or turn control **C** (depending on the version you have) to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
► Move control **B** or **C** (depending on the version you have) in any of the four directions to adjust.
► Return control **A** or **C** (depending on the version you have) to its centre position.

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the blind spots.
The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.
Take this into account when assessing the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Manual folding

You can manually fold the mirrors (parking obstruction, narrow garage, etc.)

► Turn the mirror towards the vehicle.

Electric folding

Depending on equipment, the door mirrors can be folded electrically.

► From the inside, with the ignition on, place control **A** in the central position.

► Pull control **A** backwards.

► Lock the vehicle from the outside.

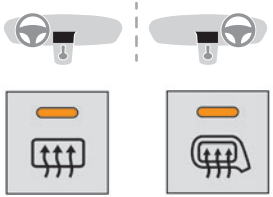
> ℹ If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked.

Electric unfolding

The door mirrors are unfolded electrically when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or key. Unless folding was selected with control **A**, pull the control in the central position towards the rear again.

> ℹ Folding/unfolding when locking/unlocking the vehicle can be deactivated. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
> If necessary, the mirrors can be folded manually.

Heated mirrors



► Press one of these buttons.

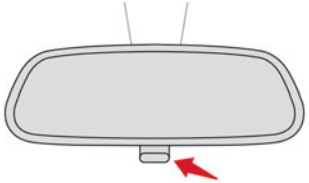
> ℹ For more information on **Rear screen demisting/de-icing**, refer to the corresponding section.

Interior rear view mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps of other vehicles, etc.

Manual model

Day/night position



► Pull the lever to change to the anti-dazzle "night" position.

► Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Adjustment

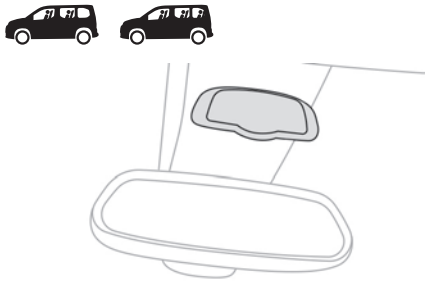
► Adjust the mirror to the normal "day" position.

Automatic "electrochrome" model

The electrochrome system uses a sensor that detects the level of exterior brightness and that coming from the rear of the vehicle, in order to automatically and gradually switch between day and night usage.

> ℹ To ensure optimum visibility while manoeuvring, the mirror automatically brightens when reverse gear is engaged.
> The system is deactivated if the load in the boot exceeds the height of the load space cover or if the load space cover has items placed on it.

Child-monitoring mirror

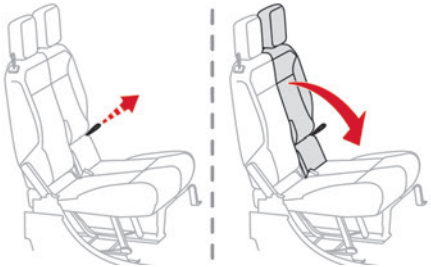


A child-monitoring mirror is installed above the interior rear view mirror. It allows the vehicle's rear passengers to be observed and facilitates discussion between the front and rear passengers without changing the mirror setting and without turning around. It can be folded easily to avoid dazzle.

2-seat front bench seat

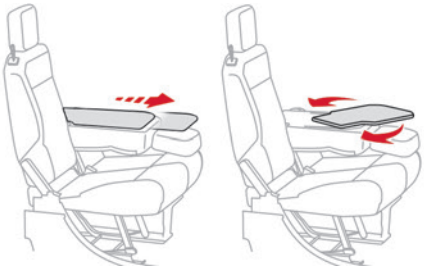
Central seat

Table position



► To lower the backrest, pull the tab on the lower edge of the seat.

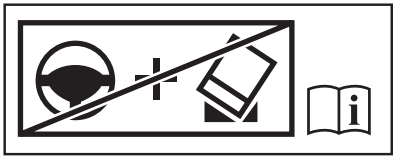
The backrest of the central seat of the bench seat tilts to form a work table, creating a mobile office (for use while stationary).



The vehicle may also be fitted with a pivoting table.

► To return the backrest to the sitting position, stow the table, then guide it until it locks.

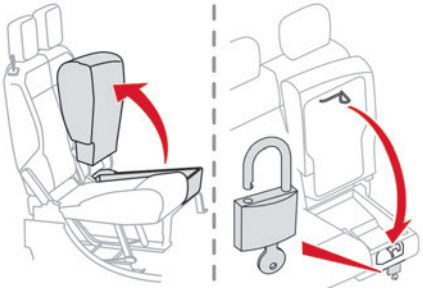
Take care not to jam the tab under the seat cushion while moving the backrest.



! Never use the table while the vehicle is being driven.

In the event of sudden braking or impact, any objects on the table might become dangerous projectiles that could cause injury.

Storage compartment under seats



► Lift the central seat to access the storage compartment. This space can be secured by fitting a padlock (not supplied).

! Each time you lock the seat in the sitting position, make sure that passengers have access to the seat belt end pieces and the associated straps.

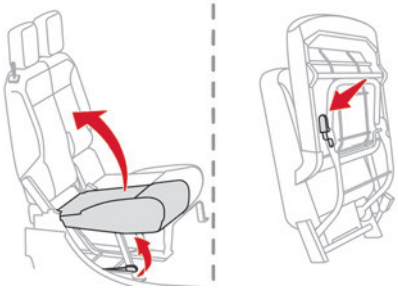
Side seat

Retractable position

► Pull the tongue on the top edge of the seat near the head restraint to tilt and guide the assembly.
It is placed in the floor of the front seat and thus forms a continuous flat floor with the loading space.
This position allows transporting long cargo inside the vehicle with the doors closed.
When retracted, the maximum weight on the backrest is 50 kg.
To replace the seat, lift the backrest until the seat locks into position on the floor.

! **Never** put your hand underneath the seat cushion to guide the seat downwards or upwards, you could get your fingers trapped.
Always just use the strap.
Before carrying out these manoeuvres, check that nothing and nobody is obstructing the moving elements and their locking.

Folded position



► Lift the yellow crank at the base of the seat to unlock and lift the assembly into folded position (seat raised against the backrest) until it locks.
This position allows the transport of high loads inside the cab.
To replace the seat, push on the yellow crank under the seat and lower the assembly until the seat locks into position on the floor.

! **Never** put your hand underneath the seat cushion to guide the seat downwards or upwards, you could get your fingers trapped.
Place your hand on the front of the seat cushion.
Before carrying out these manipulations, check that nothing and nobody is obstructing the moving elements and their locking.

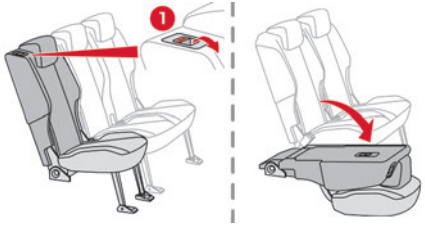
Rear bench seat (row 2)

! For safety reasons, seat adjustments must only be made when the vehicle is stationary.

Folding the backrests

First steps:
► lower the head restraints,
► if necessary, move the front seats forward,
► check that nothing or no person might interfere with the folding of the backrests (clothing, luggage, etc.),
► check that the outer seat belts are lying flat on the backrests.

i The folding of the backrest is accompanied by a slight lowering of the corresponding seat cushion.
When the backrest is released, the red indicator is visible in the release grips on the outer seats.



► Turn the backrest release handle **1**.

► Guide the backrest down to the horizontal position.

Repositioning the backrests

! First check that the outer seat belts are lying vertically flat alongside the backrest latching rings.

► Put the backrest in the upright position and push it firmly to latch it home.
► Check that the red indicator in the release grip **1** is no longer visible.
► Ensure that the outer seat belts are not trapped during the manoeuvre.

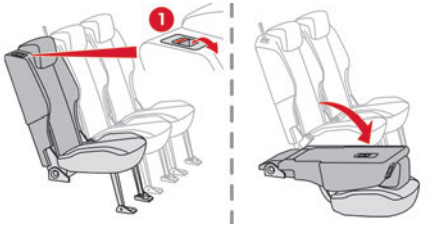
Rear seats (row 2)

Folding the backrests

First steps:
► lower the head restraints,
► if necessary, move the front seats forward,
► check that nothing or no person might interfere with the folding of the backrests (clothing, luggage, etc.),
► check that the outer seat belts are lying flat on the backrests.

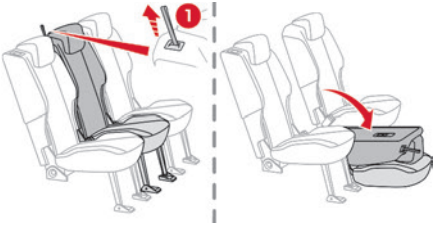
i The folding of the backrest is accompanied by a slight lowering of the corresponding seat cushion.
When the backrest is released, the red indicator is visible in the release grips on the outer seats.

Outer seat (left-hand or right-hand)



► Turn the backrest release handle **1**.
► Guide the backrest down to the horizontal position.

Central seat



► Pull the backrest release tab **1**.

► Guide the backrest down to the horizontal position.

! With the central seat, only the strap must be used.

Repositioning the backrests

Outer seat (left-hand or right-hand)

! First check that the outer seat belts are lying vertically flat alongside the backrest latching rings.

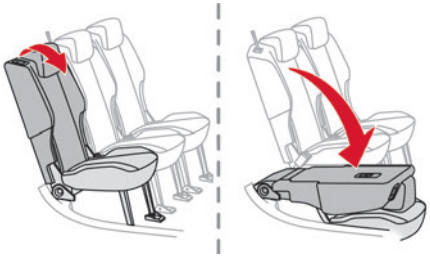
► Put the backrest in the upright position and push it firmly to latch it home.
► Check that the red indicator on the release grips **1** of the outer seats is no longer visible.
► Ensure that the outer seat belts are not trapped during the manoeuvre.

! Check that the backrest of the upright central seat is correctly aligned with the backrests of the outer seats.

Central seat
► Put the backrest in the upright position and push it firmly to latch it home.
► Check that the central seat belt is not trapped during the manoeuvre.

Rear seats (row 3)

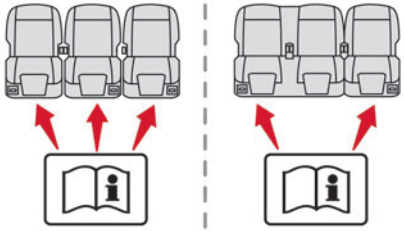
Access to row 3



► Using the row 2 seat grip, fold the backrest.
► To reposition it, tilt the backrest backwards until it locks into place.

Labels in row 3

While driving, it is prohibited to have a passenger seated next to a seat in the fully folded position.



If you want to load luggage onto the row 3 backrests while in the table position, the row 2 seats must also be folded down.

Longitudinal adjustment

XL

► Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

Table position

Placing the backrest in the table position

► Lower the head restraint as far as it will go.

► Operate control **1** to fold the backrest onto the seat cushion.

Repositioning the backrest

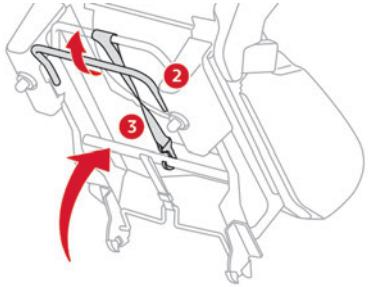
► Unlock it by pulling control **1**.
► Return it to its initial position
► Check that the assembly is anchored properly.

Fully folded position

XL

Placing the seat in the fully folded position

► Place the backrest in the table position.



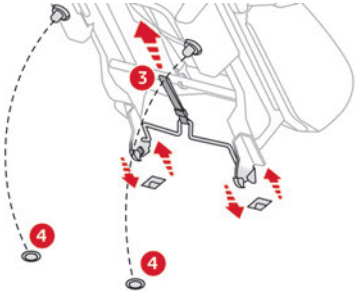
► Lift the bar **2**, located behind the seat, to release the feet of the seat from their anchorage in the floor.
► Tilt the entire seat forwards.
► Hook the strap **3** on the row 2 head restraint rod.

Returning the seat to the sitting position

► Fold the entire seat backwards.
► Check that the seat belt is not trapped during the manoeuvre.

Removing the seat

► Lower the head restraint as far as it will go.
► Place the seat in the fully folded position.

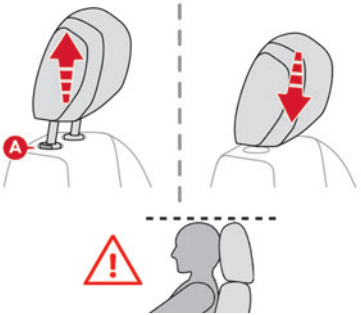


► Pull on the strap **3** to open the seat anchorages.
► While still holding the strap **3**, lift the seat.

Refitting the seat

► Pull on the strap **3** to open the seat anchorages.
► While still holding the strap **3**, place them in the anchorage points on the floor.
► Release the strap **3**.
► Ensure that no object or feet are obstructing the rear anchorage points **4** and that the seat belt is correctly positioned and available.
► Fold the seat backwards to fix its rear anchorage feet.
► Use the control **1** to lift the backrest to its original position.
► Raise the head restraint.

Head restraint height adjustment



► To raise it, pull it upwards as far as possible (notch).
► To remove it, press the lug **A** and pull it upwards.
► To put it back in place, engage the head restraint rods in the openings keeping them in line with the seat backrest.
► To lower it, press the lug **A** and push down on the head restraint at the same time.

! The head restraint has a frame with notches which prevents it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact.
The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.
Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be fitted and correctly adjusted.

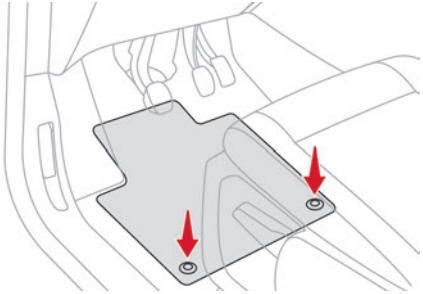
! Never drive with passengers seated at the rear when the head restraints are removed or not in the high position; the head restraints must be in place and in the high position.

i For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

Interior fittings

Mats

Fitting



When fitting it on the driver's side, only use the mountings present on the carpet.
The other mats are simply laid over the carpet.

Removing/refitting

► To remove it on the driver's side, move the seat as far back as possible and give the fasteners a quarter turn.

► To refit it, position the mat and replace the fasteners, giving them a quarter turn.
► Check that the mat is secured correctly.

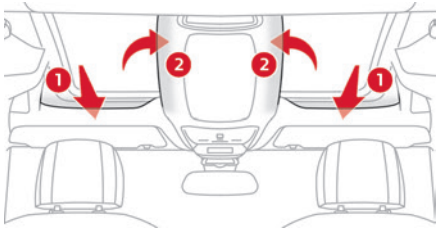
! To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
– Only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used.
– Never fit one mat on top of another.
The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/ speed limiter.
The approved mats have two fasteners located underneath the seat.

Overhead storage unit

This compartment, located above the sun visors, can be used to store various objects.

Roof and roof storage

Overhead storage compartment and central storage compartment

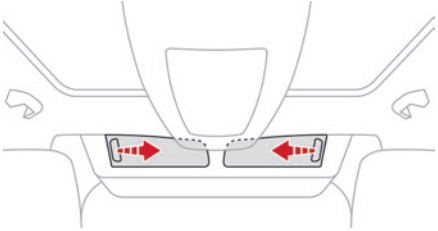


The overhead storage compartment **(1)** is located above the sun visors and can be used to store miscellaneous objects.
There is a storage space **(2)** located in the roof lining.
The maximum permitted load is 6 kg.

! In the event of sharp deceleration, objects placed in the central storage compartment of the roof may be transformed into projectiles.

Rear storage compartment

This compartment is accessible from the rear seats and from the vehicle's boot.
It has a capacity of 60 litres and the maximum permitted load is 10 kg.



► To open it from the rear seats, slide the rear storage compartment shutters.

► To open it from the vehicle's boot, place your thumb on the boot recess then pull the handle.

! Open the rear storage compartment with care, to prevent any objects stored inside from falling out.

Light ambience

The light ambience settings are changed via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

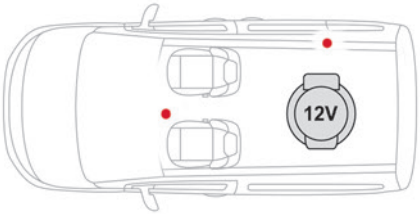
Blind

Opening/Closing

► Press and hold the button; the blind opens/closes, stopping when the button is released.

! If the blind becomes trapped while moving, reverse its movement. To do this, press the relevant control.
When pressing the button to open/close the blind, the driver must ensure that nothing and no one might interfere with its movement.
The driver must ensure that passengers use the blind correctly.
Pay particular attention to children when operating the blind.

12 V accessory socket(s)

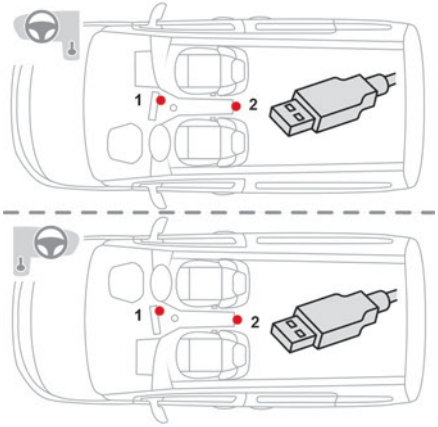


► Plug in a 12 V accessory (with a maximum rated power of 120 W) using a suitable adapter.

! Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging the accessory.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

USB socket(s)

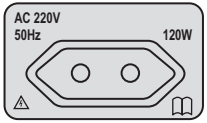


Socket **1** enables audio files sent to your audio system to be played through the vehicle's speakers.

When the USB socket is used, the portable device charges automatically.
While charging, a message is displayed if the power drawn by the portable device exceeds the current supplied by the vehicle.
For more information about how to use this equipment, refer to the sections describing the audio and telematics systems.

Socket **1** allows a smartphone to be connected by Android Auto® or CarPlay®, enabling certain smartphone applications to be used on the touch screen.
Sockets **1** and **2*** allow a portable device to be connected in order to charge it.
For best results, use a cable made or approved by the device manufacturer.
These applications can be managed using the steering-mounted controls or the audio system controls.

220 V/50 Hz socket



It is located on the side of the central storage compartment.
This socket (max. power: 150 W) operates with the engine running, and with the Stop & Start system in STOP mode.

► Lift the protective cover.
► Check that the green indicator lamp is on.
► Connect your multimedia or other electrical device (telephone charger, laptop computer, CD-DVD player, bottle warmer, etc.).
In the event of a malfunction, the green indicator lamp flashes.
Have the socket checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Connect only one device at a time to the socket (do not use extension leads or multi-socket adapters).
Connect only devices with class II insulation (shown on the device).
Do not use metal-cased devices (e.g. electric shaver, etc.).

As a safety measure, if power consumption is high and power is required by the vehicle's electrical system (due to severe weather conditions, electrical overload, etc.), power to the socket may be cut off, in which case the green indicator lamp goes off.

Wireless smartphone charger

* Only on the Citroën Berlingo Van.

This system allows wireless charging of a portable device such as a smartphone, using the magnetic induction principle, in accordance with the Qi 1.1 standard.
The portable device to be charged must be compatible with the Qi standard, either by design or by using a compatible holder or shell.
A mat can also be used provided that it is approved by the Manufacturer.
The charging area is identified by the Qi symbol.
The charger works with the engine running and with the Stop & Start system in STOP mode.
Charging is managed by the smartphone.
With the Keyless Entry and Start system, the charger's operation may be briefly disrupted when a door is opened or the ignition is switched off.

Charging

► With the charging area clear, place a device in its centre.

When the portable device is detected, the charger's indicator lamp lights up green. It remains lit for the whole time that the battery is being charged.

! The system is not designed to charge multiple devices simultaneously.

! Do not leave metal objects (e.g. coins, keys, vehicle remote control) in the charging area while a device is being charged - Risk of overheating or interrupting the charging!

! When using applications for a long time in combination with wireless charging, some smartphones may switch to thermal safety and cause some functions to stop.

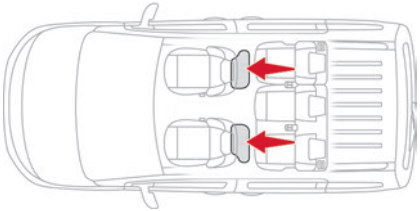
Checking operation

The state of the indicator lamp allows the operation of the charger to be monitored.

State of the indicator lamp	Meaning
Off	Engine switched off. No compatible devices detected. Charging complete.
Fixed green	Compatible portable device detected. Charging.
Flashing orange	Foreign object detected in the charging zone. Portable device not well centred in the charging zone.
Fixed orange	Malfunction of the portable device's battery meter. Device battery temperature too high. Charger malfunction.

If the indicator lamp is fixed orange:
– remove the device, then place it back in the centre of the charging zone.
or
– remove the device and try again in a quarter of an hour.
If the problem persists, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

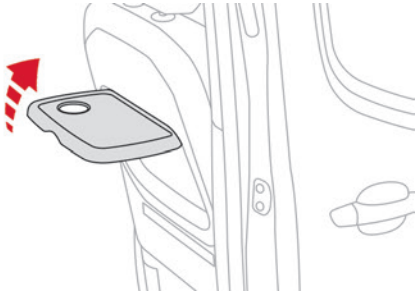
Floor boxes (Petrol or Diesel)



There are two boxes located under the rear passenger footwells.

► To open them, slide your fingers into the notch and lift the cover.

Aircraft style tables



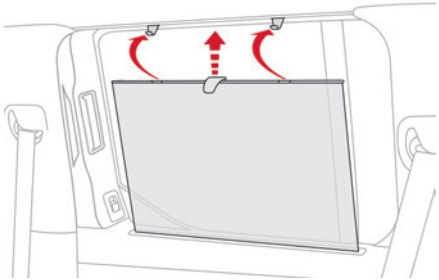
► To put the table back in place, pull it upwards. As a safety precaution, the aircraft style table unhooks itself if excessive pressure is applied.

► To store the table, pull it downwards.

! Do not place hard or heavy objects on the table. Such objects could become projectiles in the event of sudden deceleration.

Side blinds

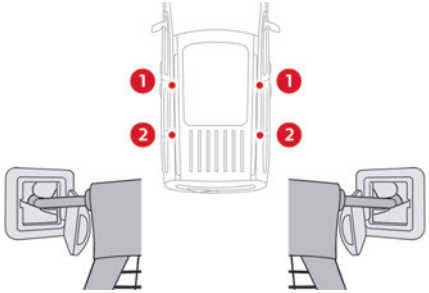
They are fitted to the windows of the sliding side doors (depending on version).



► To raise or lower the blind, pull it by the tab.

i To avoid damaging the blind:
– Guide it slowly, using the tab, while raising or lowering it.
– Make sure the tab is securely fastened before opening the door.

High load retaining net

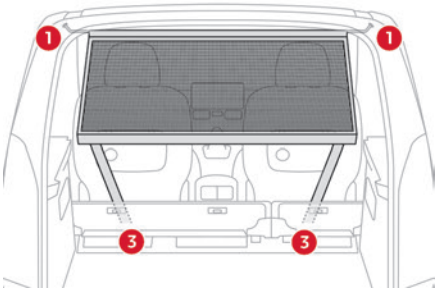


This net, hooked onto the upper mountings and the lower rings or lugs, enables the use of the full loading volume, up to the roof:
– Behind the front seats (row 1) when the rear seats are folded.
– Behind the rear seats (row 2).

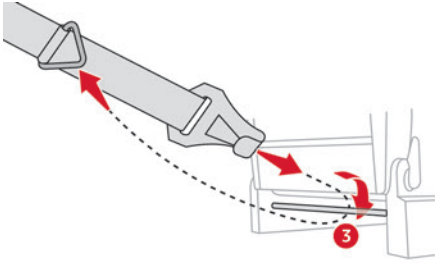
i When positioning the net, check that the strap loops are visible from the boot; this will make slackening or tightening them easier.

! Remove the luggage cover shelf or roller (depending on version).

Installation behind row 1

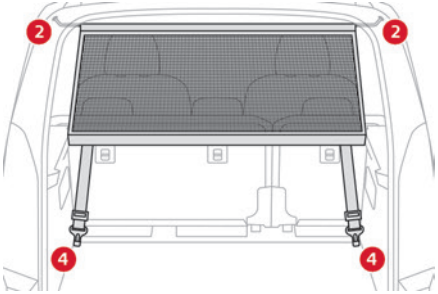


► Open the covers on the upper mountings **1**.
► Unroll the high load retaining net.
► Position one end of the net's metal bar in the corresponding upper mounting **1**, then do the same with the other end.
► Fully extend the straps.



► Wind each strap around bar **3** located under the front seat cushion (row 1), then secure each spring hook to the ring on the corresponding strap.
► Fold down the rear seats.
► Tighten the straps without raising the bench seat.
► Check that the net is hooked and tightened correctly.

Installation behind row 2



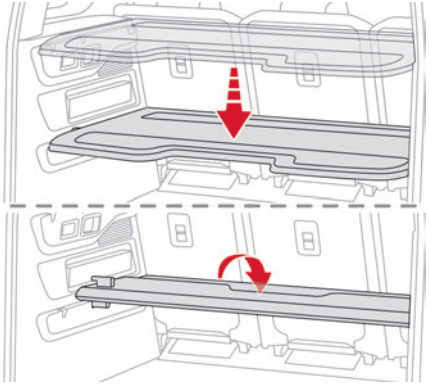
► Fold or remove the luggage cover.
► Open the covers on the upper mountings **2**.
► Unroll the high load retaining net.
► Position one end of the net's metal bar in the corresponding upper mounting **2**, then do the same with the other end.
► Attach the hook on each of the net's straps to the corresponding stowing ring **4** (located on the floor).
► Tighten the straps.
► Check that the net is hooked and tightened correctly.

! Never use the ISOFIX ring, which is for fixing the strap of a child seat with Top Tether.

Two-position luggage cover shelf (removable)

M

M



It can be installed in two different positions: high and low.
It consists of two sections which can be folded back on each other.
► To fold it from the boot, grasp it and fold it back on itself up to the rear seats. From the

low position, you can store it folded by sliding it towards the backrests of the rear seats.
► To deploy it from the boot, grasp it and unfold it to the boot pillars.

> ℹ The maximum authorised weight on the luggage cover shelf is 25 kg.

Luggage cover

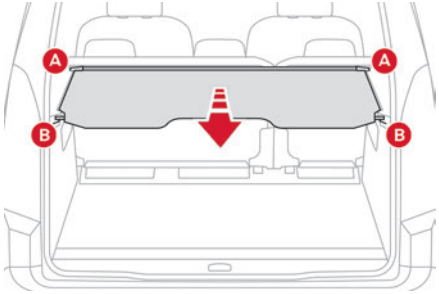
XL

XL

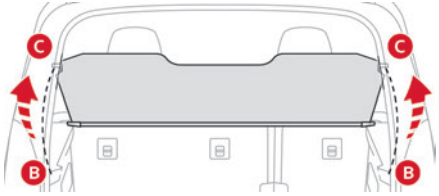
In the 5-seat configuration, it is installed behind the second row seats, with the third row seats stored folded away.
In the 7-seat configuration, it is stored behind the third row seats.

> ! In the event of sudden deceleration, objects placed on the load space cover can turn into projectiles.

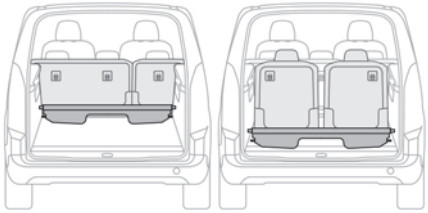
Installation



► Position the left and right ends of the roller in the cut-outs **A**.
► Pull out the roller until it reaches the boot pillars.
► Insert the roller guides into the rails in the pillars **B**.



► Depending on version, you can access the boot by opening the rear screen in the tailgate and attaching the roller guides into the rails in the pillars **C**.

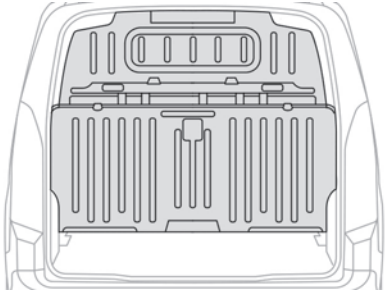


► The roller can be stored behind row **2** or **3**.

Removal

► Remove the roller guides from the rails in pillars **B**.
► Guide the roller as it reels in.
► Unlock the roller by pressing one of the handles located at the ends of the roller bracket.

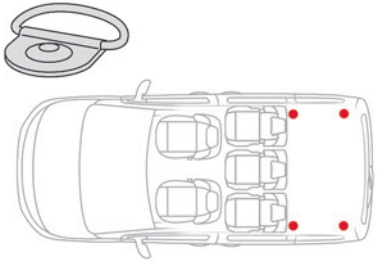
Load retaining partition

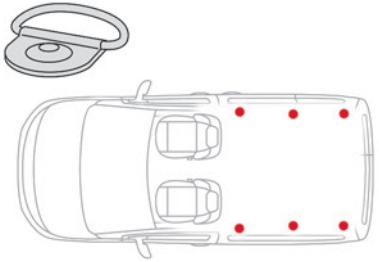


On the floor, behind the front seats, a vertical partition protects the driver and front passengers against the risk of load movement.
Steel or glazed partitions separate the loading area from the cab.

! When washing your vehicle, never clean the inside directly using a water jet.

Stowing rings





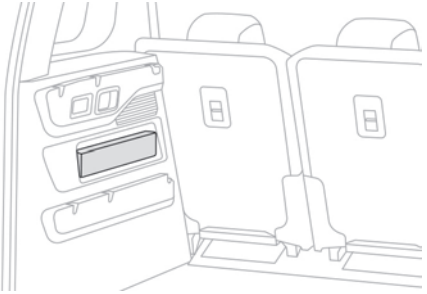
Use the stowing rings on the rear floor to secure loads.
As a safety precaution in case of sharp braking, we recommend placing heavy objects as far forwards as possible (i.e. near the cab).
We recommend using the stowing rings on the floor to firmly secure the load.

! When washing your vehicle, never clean the inside directly using a water jet.

Warning triangle

As a safety precaution, before leaving your vehicle to set up and install the triangle, always switch on the hazard warning lamps and put on your high visibility vest.

Storage compartment



There is a compartment in the interior trim of the boot in which to store a warning triangle.

Recommendations on loading

! The weight of the load must comply with the Gross Train Weight (GTW).
For more information on **Engine technical data and towed loads**, refer to the corresponding section.

! If you are using a carrying system (roof bars/roof rack), comply with the maximum loads associated with this system.
For more information on **Roof bars/Roof rack**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Make sure that the size, shape and volume of the loads carried are compatible with the highway code and safety regulations and do not impair the driver's field of vision.

! The load must be evenly distributed in the loading area so as not to interfere with driving the vehicle.
Place the load close to the side wall panels, or push it against the side wall panels between the wheel arches.
However, it is recommended that heavy objects are placed as close to the cab as possible as a precaution in case of sharp braking.

! Firmly secure all parts of the load using the stowing rings on the floor of the loading area.
For more information on the **Interior fittings** and in particular on the stowing rings, refer to the corresponding section.

! To avoid the risk of injury or accident, the load must be made stable so that it cannot slide, tip over, fall or be projected. To do this, use only retaining straps that conform to current standards (DIN, for example).
For more information on putting straps in place, refer to the manufacturer's user guide.

To prevent the load from sliding, there must not be any empty spaces between the load items and the vehicle wall panels.
As well as the straps, optimise the stability of the load with stable handling equipment (wedges, rigid blocks of wood or padding).

! When washing the vehicle, never clean the interior directly with a water jet.

For the Extenso Cab and the Crew cab

! Do not place sharp or pointed objects in the protective cover to avoid damaging it.

! **Do not place objects on the dashboard.**
Deactivate the front passenger airbag when carrying long objects.
For more information on **Deactivating the front passenger airbag**, refer to the corresponding section.

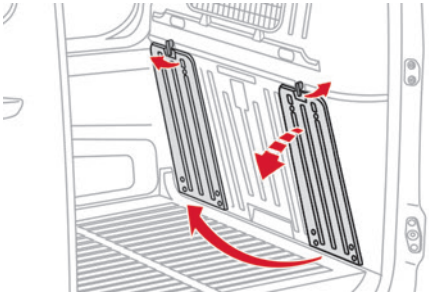
! Avoid placing short or heavy loads in the protective cover; use the loading area whenever possible.

! Avoid anchoring loads or hanging items on the wall of the partition.
For safety reasons, ensure that small objects do not slip through the gaps of about 3 cm between the partition and the vehicle's bodywork.

Extenso Cab

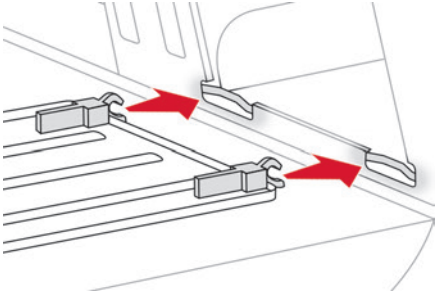
This assembly comprises the two-seat front bench seat and a removable flap.
For more information on the **two-seat front bench seat**, refer to the corresponding section.
A partition located on the floor behind the front seats protects the driver and front passengers against the risk of load movement.
A movable flap in this partition can be removed to allow long items to be loaded.
A protective cover is supplied with the vehicle to enable long items to be carried safely.

Removing the flap



► While holding the flap with one hand, turn the control at the top of the flap with the other hand to release it.
► Lower the flap to remove it from its housing.
► Stow it behind the driver's seat, turning the control at the top of the flap to secure it.

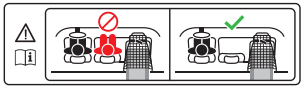
Refitting the flap



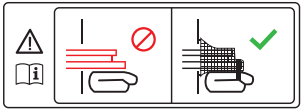
► Tilt the flap, with the yellow hinges pointing downwards.
► Insert the hinges into their housing then press down fully (to avoid vibrations).
► With one hand lift the flap to close it, then with the other hand turn the control at the top of the flap to secure it.

Positioning the protective cover

! Whenever the backrest of the outer seat is folded down and the partition flap is open, the protective cover must be installed.

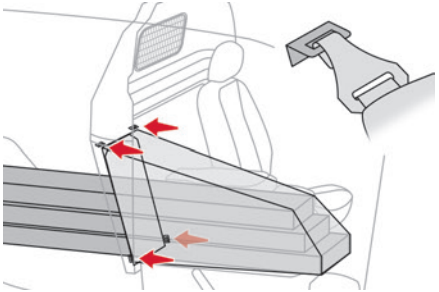


! No passengers must be allowed to sit in the central seat if the backrest of the right-hand outer seat is lowered and the partition flap is open.



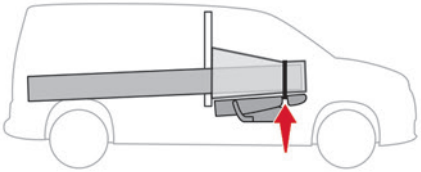
! When loading long objects, take care to install the protective cover correctly. Read the following procedure carefully.

► Fold down the outer passenger seat backrest.



► Install the protective cover by fastening its 4 snap hooks to the 4 anchor points on the partition.
► Pull out the head restraint rods from the folded backrest, leaving two notches visible.
► Load the desired objects.

i The maximum load permitted on the folded backrest is 100 kg.



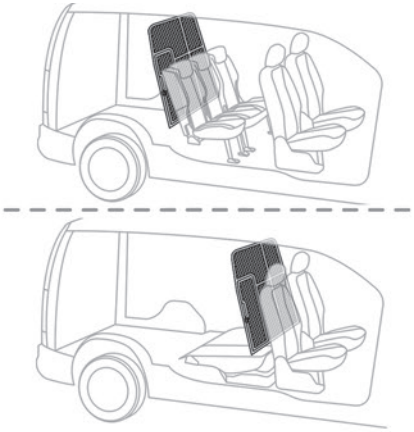
► Place the strap of the cover around the head restraint.

► Tighten the strap using the adjustable section in order to correctly retain the items that have been loaded inside the cover.

i The protective cover may be left in place after use.

i Regularly check the condition of the protective cover.
When signs of wear and tear appear, contact a CITROËN dealer to have it replaced by a protective cover that meets the specifications and qualities required by CITROËN and your vehicle.

Crew cab

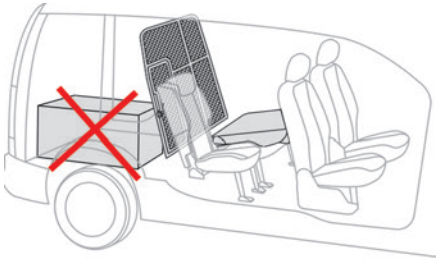


A movable partition that can be placed behind the first or second row of seats protects the driver and passengers against the risk of load movement.
A hatch in the partition can be opened to allow long items to be carried.
A protective cover is supplied with the vehicle to enable long items to be carried safely.

! Lock the movable partition in these 2 positions only.

! Do not lean on the movable partition when boarding!

! Stay alert if the vehicle is on a steep slope, with loads behind the partition and passengers on board!

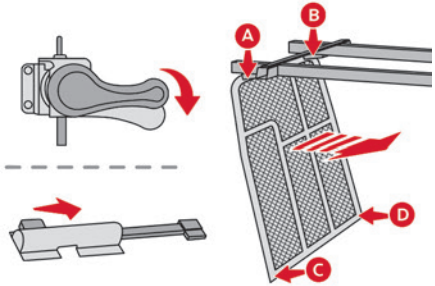


! Do not place loads behind the partition positioned behind row 2, if the backrest of part 2/3 of the bench seat is folded down.

! Deactivate the front passenger airbag when carrying long objects.

Moving the partition

Moving the partition forwards



► Fold the backrests of the row 2 seats and check that they are properly folded. If necessary, adjust the position of the row 1 seats (moving them forwards).
► Release the upper latches **A** and **B**.
► Check that the latches **C** and **D** are retracted.
► Slide the partition forwards.
► Lock the lower latches **C** and **D** and then check that the locating pins are correctly engaged in their housings.
► Lock the upper latches **A** and **B**.

Moving the partition backwards

► Release the upper latches **A** and **B**.
► Release the lower latches **C** and **D**.
► Slide the partition backwards.
► Lock the upper latches only **A** and **B**.
► Return the backrests of the row 2 seats to their positions.

The upper stops may be adjusted if:
– excessive force is needed to operate the upper latches **A** and **B**.
– there is noise while driving, caused by excessive play.

When the partition is locked behind the row 2 or row 1 seats, an engagement noise tells you that the upper and lower latches are closed.

Never drive with the partition unlocked.

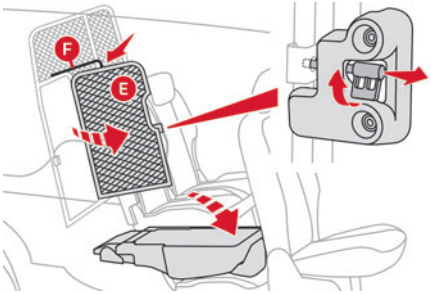
The partition must not be moved with the latches extended - risk of scratches or damage to the plastic trims!

The partition must never be removed to convert the vehicle from a commercial vehicle to a passenger vehicle.
This would pose a risk to the safety of users due to the absence of a child lock on the tailgate (mandatory on passenger vehicles).

Pay attention to the loading height behind the partition and the size of the long load in the protective cover: the driver must keep a good field of vision.

Do not place loads between the partition and the bench seat backrest.

Opening/closing the hatch



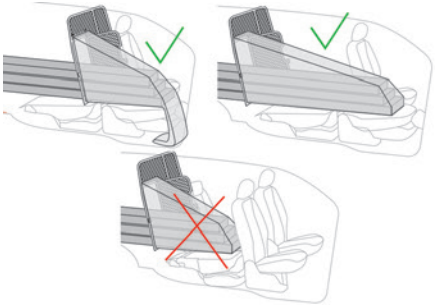
► Open/close the hatch **E** using the latch.
► Use the stay **F** to keep it in the open position.

When carrying a long load, the hatch **E** must be kept in the open position with the stay **F**.

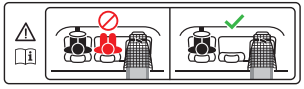
Systematically close the hatch **E**, store the stay **F** in its housing (using the clip) and straighten the backrest of the side passenger seat(s) (depending on the position of the partition) when no long load is being transported.

Avoid placing loads on the sill bar of the hatch **E**. Whenever possible, place loads on the folded-down seat backrests.
The maximum load on the sill of the hatch **E** is 20 kg.

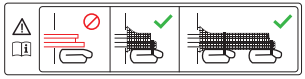
Positioning the protective cover



! The **protective cover must be installed** whenever the backrest of the outer seat is folded down and the partition hatch is open.

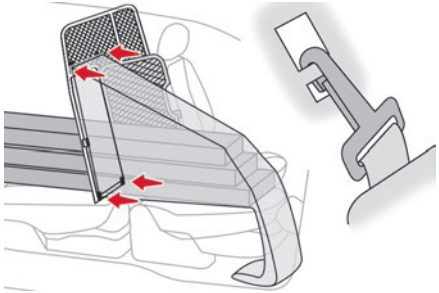


! In row 1, no passengers must be allowed to sit in the outer seat if the backrest of the outer seat located behind them in row 2 is lowered and the hatch is open with a long load.
In row 2, no passengers must be allowed to sit in the central seat if the backrest of the outer seat is lowered and the hatch is open with a long load.



! When loading long objects, take care to install the protective cover correctly.

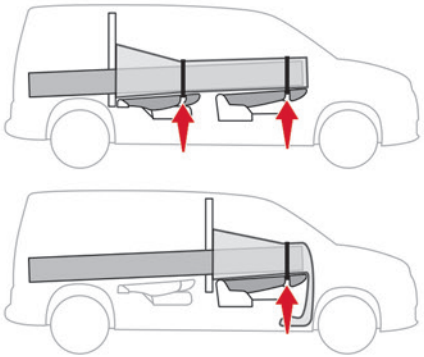
► Fold the backrest of the outer passenger seat(s) (depending on the position of the partition).
For more information on the **Rear bench seat**, and especially on folding the backrests, refer to the corresponding section.
For more information on the **Two-seat front bench seat**, and especially the retracted position of the outer seat, refer to the corresponding section.



► Install the protective cover by fastening its 4 snap hooks to the 4 anchor points on the partition.
► Pull out the head restraint rods from the folded backrest(s) of the outer seat(s) (depending on the position of the partition), leaving 2 notches visible.
► Load the desired objects.

i Avoid placing heavy loads on the folded-down backrest of row 1.
Whenever possible, place heavy loads on the floor.
The maximum load permitted on each of the folded backrests of row 2 is 80 kg.

i It is normal for surplus protective cover to be visible when the partition is positioned behind row 1.
► Tidy this surplus protective cover in the space under the glove box.



► Position the strap(s) around the head restraint(s) (depending on the position of the partition).
► Tighten the strap(s) using the adjustable section in order to correctly retain the items that have been loaded inside the cover.

! Do not place any load in the passenger compartment outside the protective cover (especially over the cover).

i Regularly check the condition of the protective cover.
When signs of wear and tear appear, contact a CITROËN dealer to have it replaced by a protective cover that meets the specifications and qualities required by CITROËN and your vehicle.

Heating and Ventilation

Advice

i **Using the ventilation and air conditioning system**
► To ensure that air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.
► Do not cover the sunshine sensor located on the dashboard; this sensor is used to regulate the automatic air conditioning system.
► Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes once or twice a month to keep it in good working order.
► If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
When towing a large load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power, enhancing the towing capacity.

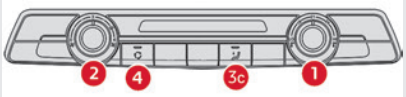
! Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off or with prolonged operation of interior air recirculation. Risk of misting and deterioration of the air quality!

If the interior temperature is very high after the vehicle has stood for a long time in the sunshine, air the passenger compartment for a few moments.
Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

i Condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water underneath the vehicle. This is perfectly normal.

i **Servicing the ventilation and air conditioning system**
► Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.
We recommend using a composite passenger compartment filter. Its specific active additive helps protect against polluting gases and bad smells.
► To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, have it checked according to the recommendations in the Manufacturer's service schedule.

Rapid heating of the passenger compartment



► Press button **3c**.
► Set knob **1** to a high temperature (minimum 21).
► Set knob **2** to at least position 3. In cold weather (around 0°C), the heating of the passenger compartment is optimal when ventilation is at level 5.
► Press button **4** to produce quicker results (do not leave air recirculation active for too long: risk of misting the windows).
► Do not press any of the other buttons.

Contains R134A fluorinated greenhouse gases
Depending on version and country of sale, the air conditioning system may contain R134A fluorinated greenhouse gases.

Stop & Start
The heating and air conditioning systems only operate when the engine is running. Temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.

For more information on the **Stop & Start** system, refer to the corresponding section.

Heating

Manual air conditioning

The air conditioning system only operates with the engine running.

1. Temperature.
2. Air flow.
3. Air distribution.
4. Interior air recirculation.
5. Air conditioning on/off.

Air flow

► Turn knob **2** to obtain sufficient air flow to ensure your comfort.

The maximum level of ventilation is to be reserved for defrosting or to cool the temperature in the vehicle if it is too high.

If the air flow control knob is set to the **minimum** position (system deactivated), the temperature in the vehicle will no longer be controlled. A slight flow of air can still be felt, due to the forward movement of the vehicle.

Temperature

► Turn the thumbwheel **1** from "**LO**" (cold) to "**HI**" (hot) to adjust the temperature to your requirements.

A setting of around 21 provides optimum comfort. Depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.
In addition, we recommend avoiding left/right setting differences of more than 3.

On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is significantly colder or warmer than the comfort value setting, there is no need to alter the value displayed in order to reach the required level of comfort. The system compensates automatically and corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, it is possible to exceed the minimum value 14 or the maximum value 28.
► Turn control **1** to the left until **"LO"** is displayed or to the right until **"HI"** is displayed.

Air distribution

Windscreen and side windows (**3a**).

Central and side air vents (**3b**).

Footwells (**3c**).

The air distribution can be adapted by combining the corresponding buttons.

For optimum comfort, depending on the outside temperature
<15°C: press buttons **3a** and **3c**.
15°C- 25°C: press buttons **3b** and **3c**.
>25°C: press button **3b**.

Air conditioning

With the engine running, the air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It enables you to:
– lower the temperature in summer,
– enhance the effectiveness of the demisting function in winter, above 3°C.

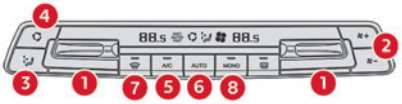
On/Off

► Press button **5** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.
When the air conditioning is in operation, to cool the air more quickly, you can use interior air recirculation for a few moments by pressing button **4**. Then restore the intake of exterior air.

The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off.

Switching the system off could result in discomfort (humidity, misting).

Dual-zone automatic air conditioning



1. Temperature.
2. Air flow.
3. Air distribution.
4. Recirculation of interior air.
5. Air conditioning on/off.
6. Automatic comfort mode.
7. Visibility programme.
8. "Mono" function.

Automatic comfort mode

► Press the "**AUTO**" button **6** to toggle the mode.
The active mode appears in the display screen, as described below:

AUTO SOFT	Ensures soft, quiet operation by limiting air flow.
AUTO	Offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation.
FAST AUTO	Provides dynamic, effective air flow.

When the engine is cold, the air flow will only increase to its optimum level gradually, to avoid distributing too much cold air.
In cold weather, it prioritises the distribution of warm air to the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells only.

Manual mode

If you wish, you can make a different choice from that suggested by the system, by changing a setting. The other functions will still be controlled automatically.
The "**AUTO**" symbol disappears if you change a setting.

Deactivating the system

► Press button **2** "**-**" until the fan symbol disappears.

This disables all functions of the dual-zone automatic air conditioning system.
The temperature is no longer regulated. A slight flow of air can still be felt, due to the forward movement of the vehicle.
► Press button **2** "**+**" to switch the system on again.

Temperature

The driver and front passenger can each set the temperature to suit their preferences.
The value shown on the display is a level of comfort, not a temperature in Celsius or Fahrenheit.
► Push button **1** down to decrease the value or up to increase it.

> i A setting of around 21 provides optimum comfort. Depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.
> In addition, we recommend avoiding left/right setting differences of more than 3.

> i On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is significantly colder or warmer than the comfort value setting, there is no need to alter the value displayed in order to reach the required level of comfort. The system compensates automatically and corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

> i For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, it is possible to exceed the minimum value 14 or the maximum value 28.
> ► Push button **1** down until **"LO"** is displayed or up until **"HI"** is displayed.

"Mono" function

The comfort setting for the passenger side can be indexed to the driver's comfort setting (mono-zone).
► Press the corresponding button **8** to activate/deactivate the function.
The indicator lamp in the button comes on when the function is activated.
The function is deactivated automatically if a passenger uses the temperature control.

Visibility programme

► Press the "**visibility**" button **7** to demist or de-ice the windscreen and side windows as quickly as possible.
The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.
► Press the "**visibility**" button **7** again to stop the programme.
Or
► Press the "**AUTO**" button **6** to return to the Automatic Comfort programme.

Air conditioning

With the engine running, the air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It enables you to:
– lower the temperature in summer,
– enhance the effectiveness of the demisting function in winter, above 3°C.

On/Off

► Press button **5** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.
When the air conditioning is in operation, to cool the air more quickly, you can use interior air recirculation for a few moments by pressing button **4**. Then restore the intake of exterior air.

> i The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off.

> ! Switching the system off could result in discomfort (humidity, misting).

Air distribution

► Pressing button **3** successively directs the air flow towards:
– windscreen, side windows and footwells,
– footwells,
– central vents, side vents and footwells,
– windscreen, side windows, central vents, side vents and footwells,
– central and side vents,

– windscreen and side windows (demisting or defrosting).

For optimum comfort, depending on the outside temperature
<15°C: press button **3** until air flow to the windscreen, side windows and passenger footwells is activated.
15°C-25°C: press button **3** until air flow to the central and side air vents and passenger footwells is activated.
>25°C: press button **3** until air flow to the central and side air vents is activated.

Air flow

► Press the buttons **2** to increase/decrease the air flow.
The air flow symbol (a fan) appears. It is filled in or emptied gradually, according to the value set.

Recirculation of interior air

The intake of exterior air helps avoid and eliminate misting of the windscreen and side windows.
The recirculation of interior air allows the passenger compartment to be isolated from polluted air in areas of heavy traffic and inside tunnels.

When required, this function also allows faster heating or cooling of the air in the passenger compartment.

► Press button **4** to recirculate the interior air or allow the intake of exterior air.

Avoid the prolonged recirculation of interior air in order to ensure a good supply of fresh air and reduce the risk of misting (especially when several passengers are on board or when the air is cold/damp, etc.).

Front demisting - de-icing

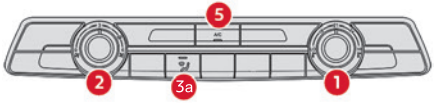
Heating

For optimum demisting/de-icing in winter, carry out the following adjustments:

► Press button **3a**.
► Set knob **1** to the maximum temperature.
► Set knob **2** to the "demisting/de-icing" symbol.
► Do not press any of the other buttons.
Once demisting/de-icing has been completed, modify the settings according to the desired conditions.

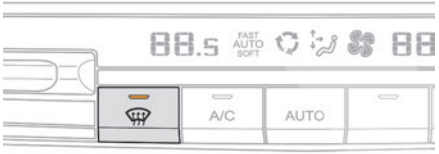
Manual air conditioning

To demist/prevent misting in high humidity or when there is a big temperature difference between the outside and inside of the vehicle, carry out the following adjustments:



► Press button **5**.
► Press button **3a**.
► Set knob **1** to a high temperature (minimum 21).
► Set knob **2** to level 2 or above.
► Do not press any of the other buttons.
Once demisting has been completed, modify the settings according to the desired conditions.

Dual-zone automatic air conditioning



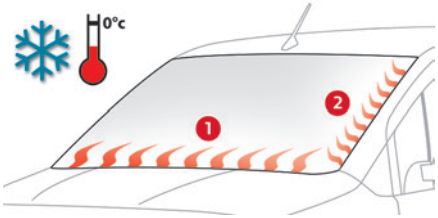
► Press this button to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows more quickly.
The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

► To turn it off, press this button again or press "**AUTO**".
The system restarts with the values in use before it was deactivated.

Heated windscreen and washer jets
For more information on the **Wiper control stalk** and in particular the heated windscreen and washer jets, refer to the corresponding section.

With Stop & Start, when demisting - defrosting has been activated, STOP mode is not available.

Heated windscreen

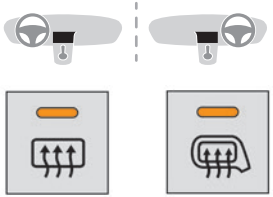


In cold weather, this system heats the bottom of the windscreen, as well as the area alongside the left-hand windscreen pillar.
Without changing the settings for the air conditioning system, it allows faster release of the windscreen wiper blades when they are frozen to the windscreen and helps avoid the accumulation of snow resulting from the operation of the windscreen wipers.

Switching on/off

► With the engine running, press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by an indicator lamp).
The period of operation depends on the outside temperature.
The function switches off automatically to prevent excessive power consumption.

Demisting/de-icing the rear screen and/or the door mirrors

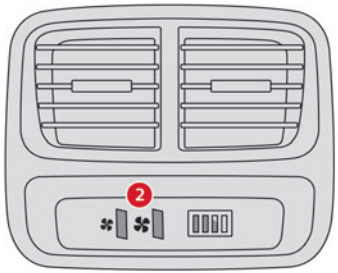


► Press one of these buttons to switch on/off rear screen and door mirror demisting/de-icing (depending on version).
The indicator lamp in the button comes **on** when the function is **activated**.
Demisting/de-icing switches off automatically to prevent excessive power consumption.

Switch off demisting/de-icing as soon as you no longer consider it necessary, as decreased power consumption in turn reduces energy consumption.

Demisting/de-icing only operates with the engine running.

Rear heating and air conditioning



If your vehicle is so equipped, the temperature of the air distributed by the system is the same as the selection for the front.

Air flow

► Press one of the buttons **2** to increase/decrease the air flow.

Additional heating/ventilation system

Only available for Diesel vehicles.

Heating

This is an additional and separate system which heats the passenger compartment and improves defrosting performance.

This indicator lamp is lit while the system is programmed or set in operation remotely via the remote control.
It flashes during the whole duration of the heating and goes off at the end of the heating cycle or when stopped using the remote control.

Ventilation

This system allows ventilation of the passenger compartment with exterior air to improve the temperature experienced on entering the vehicle in summer.

Programming

With CITROËN Connect Radio

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Then press "**Programmable heating/ventilation**".

► Select the "**Status**" tab to activate/deactivate the system.

► Select the "**Other settings**" tab to choose the "**Heating**" mode, to heat the engine and passenger compartment, or "**Ventilation**" to ventilate the passenger compartment.

► Then set/save the time at which the preheating temperature will be reached for each selection.

Press this button to save.

With CITROËN Connect Nav

► Press the "**Applications**" menu.

► Press the "**Vehicle Apps**" tab.

► Press "**Temperature programming**".

► Press the "**Status**" tab to activate/deactivate the system.

► Press the "**Parameters**" tab to select "**Heating**" mode to heat the engine and passenger compartment or "**Ventilation**" mode to ventilate the passenger compartment.

► Then set/save the activation time for each selection.

► Press "**OK**" to confirm.

> ℹ You must allow at least 60 minutes between programming operations.

Depending on the outside temperature, a certain amount of pre-conditioning time is necessary in order to reach the programmed temperature by the stored activation time.
This pre-conditioning time lasts up to 45 min. with a Diesel engine and up to 30 min. with a petrol engine.

Long range remote control

(Depending on version.)
This enables you to switch the heating in the passenger compartment on or off from a distance.
The remote control has a range of about 0.6 miles (1 km) in open country.

On

► Pressing and holding this button starts the heating immediately (confirmed by the green indicator lamp coming on briefly).

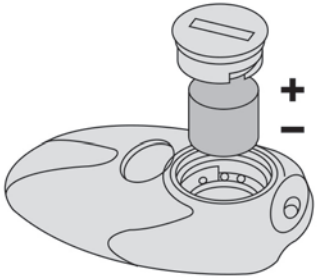
Off

OFF ► Pressing and holding this button stops the heating immediately (confirmed by the red indicator lamp coming on briefly).

The indicator lamp in the remote control flashes for about 2 seconds if the vehicle has not received the signal, in which case you should move to a different location and repeat the command.

Changing the battery

The indicator lamp in the remote control will change to orange if the battery charge is low. If the indicator lamp is not on, the battery is discharged.



► Use a coin to unscrew the cap and replace the battery.

If the system is switched on using the long-range remote control, the maximum heating duration is around 45 min. with a Diesel engine, and around 30 min. with a petrol engine.

The ventilation is activated provided that the battery is sufficiently charged.
The heating is activated provided that:
– the battery charge and the fuel level are sufficient,
– the engine has been started since the previous heating cycle,
– 60 minutes have elapsed between two heating requests.

Programmable heating is supplied by the vehicle fuel tank. Before use, make sure that you have sufficient fuel. If the fuel tank is on reserve, you are strongly recommended not to programme the heating.

The additional heating must always be switched off while refuelling to avoid any risk of fire or explosion.

To avoid the risk of poisoning or asphyxia, the programmable heating must not be used, even for short periods, in a closed environment such as a garage or

workshop which is not equipped with an exhaust gas extraction system.
Do not park the vehicle on a flammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, paper, etc.) - Risk of fire!

! Glazed surfaces such as the rear screen or windscreen can become very hot in places.
Never put objects on these surfaces; never touch these surfaces - Risk of burns!

Do not throw remote control batteries away, as they contain metals that are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved disposal point.

Temperature conditioning (Electric)

This function allows you to programme the temperature in the passenger compartment to reach a pre-defined, non-modifiable temperature (approx. 21°C) before you enter the vehicle, on the days and at the times of your choice.
This function is available when the vehicle is connected or not connected.

Programming

Programming can be carried out from a smartphone using the **MyCitroën App** application.
For more information on **Remote functions**, refer to the corresponding section.

With CITROËN Connect Nav system

In the **Applications** menu:

Press "**Car Apps**" to display the applications home page.

Select **Temperature conditioning**.

► Press **+** to add a programme.
► Select the time of entry into the vehicle and the desired days. Press **OK**.
► Press **ON** to activate this programme.
The temperature pre-conditioning sequence begins approximately 45 minutes before the programmed time when the vehicle is connected (20 minutes when it is not connected) and is maintained for 10 minutes after.

i You can set multiple programmes. Each one is saved in the system.
To optimise the driving range, we recommend starting a programme while the vehicle is connected.

i The fan noise that occurs during temperature pre-conditioning is perfectly normal.

Operating conditions

– The function is only activated when the **ignition is switched off** and the **vehicle locked**.
– When the vehicle is not connected, the function is only activated if the battery charge level is greater than 50%.
– When the vehicle is not connected and a recurring programme is active (e.g. from Monday to Friday), if two temperature pre-conditioning sequences are run without the vehicle being used, the programme will be deactivated.

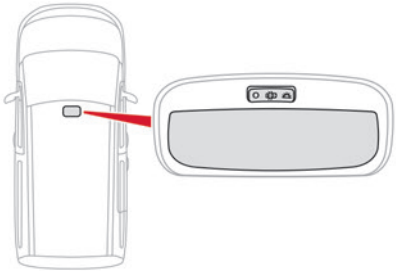
Courtesy lamp

Automatic switching on/off

The front courtesy lamp comes on when the key is removed from the ignition switch.
All courtesy lamps come on when the vehicle is unlocked, when one of the corresponding doors is opened and when locating the vehicle using the remote control.
They fade to off after the ignition is switched on and when the vehicle is locked.

! Take care not to allow objects to come into contact with the courtesy lamp.

Type 1

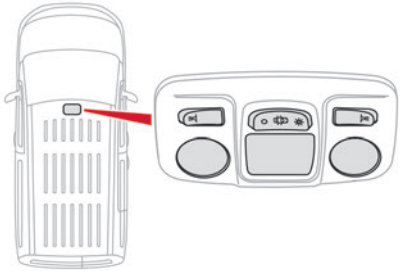


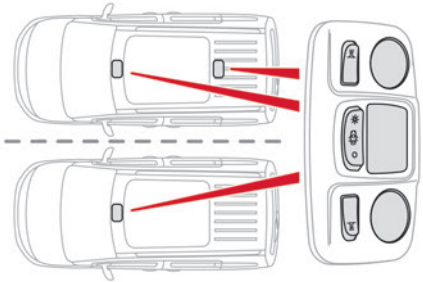
Always lit, ignition on.

Lights up when one of the front or rear doors is opened.

Always off.

Type 2





Front: comes on when one of the front or rear doors is opened (sliding side door and depending on equipment, left-hand side-hinged door or tailgate).

Always lit, ignition on.

Row 2: comes on when one of the rear doors is opened (sliding side door and depending on equipment, left-hand side-hinged door or tailgate).

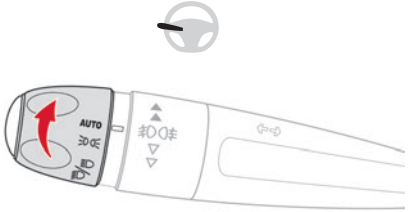
Always off.

Individual reading lamp

If fitted to the vehicle, these are switched on and off by means of a manual switch. With the ignition on, operate the corresponding switch.

Lighting control stalk

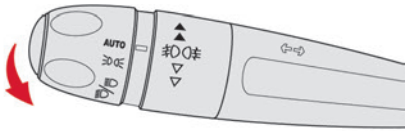
Main lighting



AUTO	Automatic illumination of lamps/daytime running lamps
	Sidelamps only
	Dipped or main beam headlamps

Operation of the selected lighting is confirmed by the illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp.

Headlamp dipping



► Pull the lighting control stalk to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps.
In "**AUTO**" and sidelamps mode, pull the lighting control stalk to switch the main beam headlamps on directly ("headlamp flash").

Foglamps selection ring

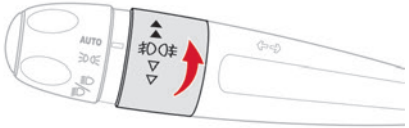
Rear foglamps

They only work if the sidelamps are on.

► Rotate the ring forwards/backwards to turn them on/off.
When the lighting is switched off automatically ("**AUTO**" position) the foglamps and the dipped beam headlamps remain on.

Front foglamps/Rear foglamps

They operate with the sidelamps, dipped or main beam headlamps on.



► Rotate the ring forwards:
- once to switch on the front foglamps,
- a second time to switch on the rear foglamps.

► Turn in the opposite direction to switch off.
If the lighting is switched off automatically ("**AUTO**" position) or the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.
► Rotate the ring backwards to switch the foglamps off; the sidelamps will then switch off.

Switching on the foglamps is prohibited in clear weather or in rain, both day and night. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They must only be used in fog or falling snow (rules may vary depending on country).
Do not forget to switch off the foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

Switching off of the lighting when the ignition is switched off
When the ignition is switched off, all of the lamps turn off immediately, except for the dipped beam headlamps if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

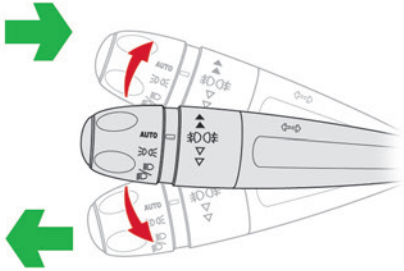
Switching on the lamps after switching off the ignition
If the driver's door is opened, a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lamps are on.
They will go off automatically after a period of time that depends on the level of charge in the battery (entering energy economy mode).

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal, and will disappear after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Never look too closely at the light beam of LED technology lamps - risk of serious eye injury!

Travelling abroad
If planning to use your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the dipped beam headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling oncoming drivers. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Direction indicators



► Left or right: lower or raise the lighting control stalk, beyond the point of resistance.

If you keep the direction indicators on for more than 20 seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 50 mph (80 km/h).

Three flashes

► Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

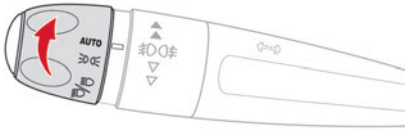
Parking lamps

(Depending on version)
Vehicle side marking by lighting the sidelamps on the traffic side only.
► Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk upwards or downwards, depending on the side of the traffic (e.g. when parking on the right, push the lighting control stalk down to light up on the left).
This is confirmed by an audible signal and the lighting of the corresponding direction indicator lamp on the instrument panel.
► To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

Automatic headlamp illumination

When a low level of ambient light is detected by a sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action

on the part of the driver. They can also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as the automatic rain sensitive wipers.
As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.



► Turn the ring to the **"AUTO"** position. When the function is activated, a message is also displayed.
► Turn the ring to **another position**. An onscreen message is displayed to confirm that the function has been deactivated.

Malfunction

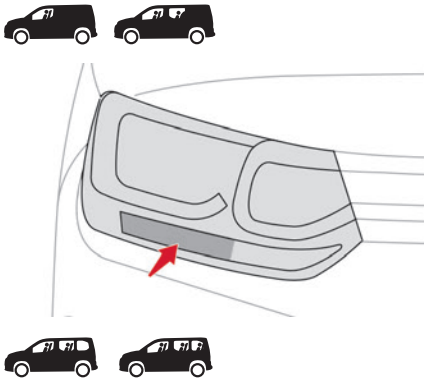
In the event of a malfunction of the rain/sunshine sensor, the vehicle's lamps come on and this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and/or the display of a message. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

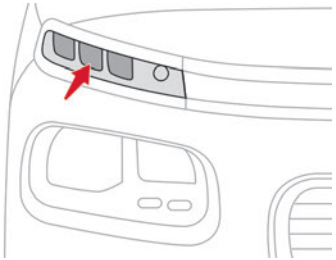
! Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard or at the top centre of the windscreen behind the interior rear view mirror (depending on equipment); the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

i In fog or snow, the rain/sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. For this reason, the lighting will not come on automatically.

i The inner surface of the windscreen may become misted up and affect the proper operation of the rain/sunshine sensor.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

Daytime running lamps / Sidelamps





The front lamps light up automatically when the engine starts.
They provide the following functions:
– Daytime running lamps (lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position with adequate light level).
– Sidelamps (lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position with low light levels or "Sidelamps only" or "Dipped/main beam headlamps").

i The LEDs are brighter when operating as daytime running lamps.

Guide-me-home and welcome lighting

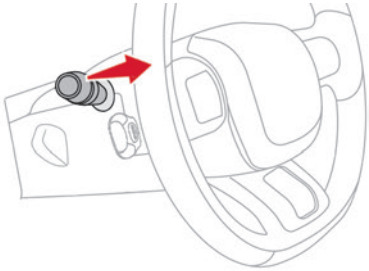
Guide-me-home lighting

Automatic

With the ring of the lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position and when the light is poor, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.

You can activate/deactivate this function and adjust the guide-me-home lighting duration in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Manual



► With the ignition off, pull the lighting control stalk toward you ("headlamp flash") to activate/deactivate the function.
Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically after a period of time.

Welcome lighting

With the "Automatic headlamp illumination" function activated, in poor light, the sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked.
Activation, deactivation and the duration of the exterior welcome lighting are set in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Automatic lighting systems - General recommendations

The automatic lighting systems use a detection camera, located at the top of the windscreen.

Operating limits
The system may be disrupted or not work correctly:
– When visibility conditions are poor (e.g. snowfall, heavy rain).
– If the windscreen is dirty, misted-up or masked (e.g. sticker) in front of the camera.
– If the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs or safety barrier reflectors.
The system is not able to detect:
– Road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians.
– Vehicles with hidden lighting (e.g. travelling behind a safety barrier on the motorway).
– Vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

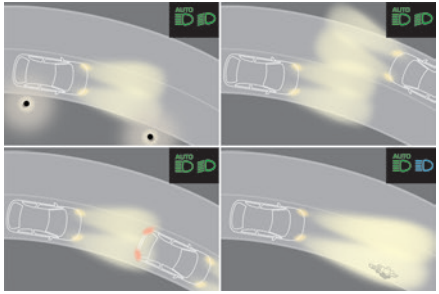
Maintenance
Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera.
The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could obstruct the camera.

Automatic headlamp dipping

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations for automatic lighting systems**.

With the ring of the lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position and the function activated on the touch screen, this system automatically switches between dipped and main beam headlamps, according to lighting and traffic conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.



! This system is a driving aid.
The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use in the prevailing light, visibility and traffic conditions, and for compliance with driving and vehicle regulations.

i The system becomes operational when the vehicle exceeds 16 mph (25 km/h).
When the speed falls below 9 mph (15 km/h), the function is no longer operational.

Activation/Deactivation

The settings are changed via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.
When deactivated, the lighting system changes to "automatic illumination of headlamps" mode.
The state of the system is stored when the ignition is switched off.

Operation

If the ambient light level is very low and traffic conditions permit:
– The main beam headlamps come on automatically. These indicator lamps light up on the instrument panel.
If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or the traffic conditions do not allow the main beam headlamps to be lit:
– The dipped beam headlamps remain lit. These indicator lamps light up on the instrument panel.
The function is deactivated if the foglamps are switched on or if the system detects poor visibility conditions (e.g. fog, heavy rain, snowfall).
When the foglamps are switched off or when the visibility conditions become favourable again, the function is automatically reactivated.
This indicator lamp goes out when the function is deactivated.

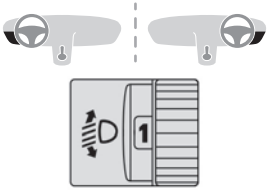
Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.
► A "headlamp flash" pauses the function and the lighting system switches to "automatic illumination of lamps" mode:
– If the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to main beam.
– If the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to dipped beam.
► To reactivate the function, once again switch the headlamps manually between dipped and main beam.

i The system may be disrupted or not work correctly:
– When visibility conditions are poor (snowfall, heavy rain, etc.).
– If the windscreen in front of the camera is dirty, misted or obscured (for example, by a sticker).
– If the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs.
When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function.
The system is not able to detect:
– Road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians.
– Vehicles whose lighting is obscured (for example, vehicles driving behind a safety barrier on a motorway).
– Vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

! Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera.
The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.
Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could obstruct the detection camera.

Headlamp beam height adjustment



To avoid inconvenience to other road users, the height of the halogen headlamps should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0 (Initial setting) Unladen.
1 Partial load.
2 Medium load.
3 Maximum authorised load.
4 5 6 Not used.

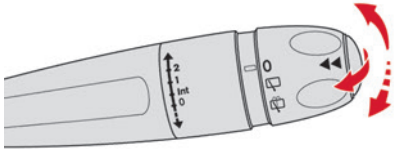
Wiper control stalk

i Before operating the wipers in wintry conditions, clear any snow, ice or frost from the windscreen and around the wiper arms and blades.

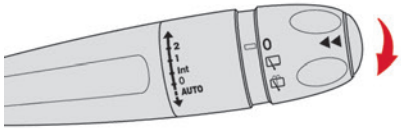
! Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. In extremely hot or cold weather, check that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

i After using an automatic car wash, you may temporarily notice abnormal noises and poorer wiping performance. You do not need to replace the wiper blades.

Without AUTO wiping



With AUTO wiping



Windscreen wipers

► To select the wiping speed: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

2	Fast wiping (heavy rain)
1	Normal wiping (moderate rain)
Int	Intermittent wiping (proportional to the vehicle's speed)
0	Switching off
↓	Single wipe (press down and release).

or

AUTO	Automatic wiping

Refer to the corresponding section.

Windscreen wash

► Pull the wiper control stalk towards you and hold.
A final wiping cycle is performed when screenwashing ends.

i The windscreen wash jets are incorporated into the tip of each wiper arm.
Screenwash fluid is sprayed along the length of the wiper blade. This improves visibility and reduces screenwash fluid consumption.

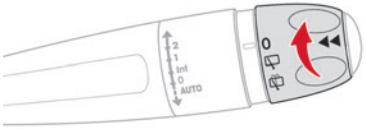
i With automatic air conditioning, any action on the screenwash control results in temporary closure of the air intake to protect the passenger compartment from any odour.

! To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the screenwash if the screenwash reservoir is empty.
Only operate the screenwash if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. During the winter period, use "very cold climate" rated products.
Never top up with water.

Low screenwash fluid level

When the low level of the reservoir is reached, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
It comes on when the ignition is switched on, or every time the stalk is operated, until the reservoir is refilled.
Refill the screenwash reservoir (or have it refilled) the next time you stop.

Rear wiper



► Turn the ring to align the desired symbol with the marking.

Off

Intermittent wiping

Screenwash-wipe

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically if the front windscreen wipers are operating.

Activation/Deactivation

The settings are changed via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

i This function is activated by default.

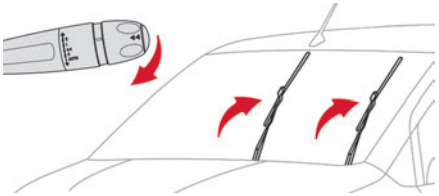
! In the event of accumulation of snow or hard frost or if a bicycle carrier is fitted to a towing device, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the touch screen's **Driving/ Vehicle** menu.

Special position of the windscreen wipers

This maintenance position is used while cleaning or replacing the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in wintry weather (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

i To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:
– handle them with care.
– clean them regularly using soapy water.
– avoid using them to hold cardboard on the windscreen.
– replace them at the first signs of wear.

Before removing a windscreen wiper blade



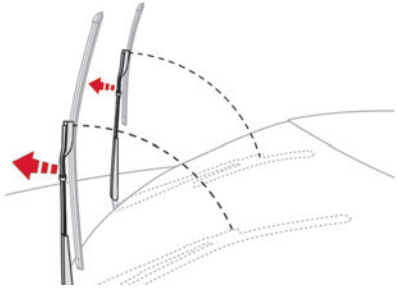
Operating the wiper control stalk immediately after switching off the ignition will place the wiper blades in a vertical position.
► Proceed with the desired operation or the replacement of the wiper blades.

After refitting a windscreen wiper blade

► To return the wiper blades to their initial position after the operation, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper control stalk.

Changing a wiper blade

Removing/Refitting at the front



► Carry out these wiper blade replacement operations from the driver's side.
► Starting with the wiper blade farthest from you, hold each arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.

! Take care not to hold the arms at the jet locations.
Do not touch the wiper blades - risk of irreparable deformation.
Do not release them while moving them. Risk of damaging the windscreen!

► Clean the windscreen using screenwash fluid.

i Do not apply "Rain X" type water-repellent products.

► Unclip the worn wiper blade closest to you and remove it.
► Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
► Repeat the procedure for the other wiper blade.
► Starting with the wiper blade closest to you, once again hold each arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the windscreen.

Removing/refitting at the rear

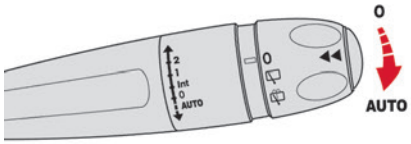
► Hold the arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.
► Clean the rear screen using screenwash fluid.
► Unclip the worn wiper blade and remove it.
► Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
► Once again hold the arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the rear screen.

Automatic windscreen wipers

In **AUTO** mode, the windscreen wipers operate automatically and adapt to the intensity of the rainfall.
Detection is via a rain/brightness sensor, located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.

! Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor.
When using an automatic car wash, switch off the automatic wipers and the ignition.
In winter, wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic wipers.

Switching on



► Give a short downwards push to the control stalk.
A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.

This indicator lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.
Depending on version, this indicator lamp appears on the display or on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

Switching off

► Give the control stalk another brief push downwards or set the control stalk to another position (**Int**, **1** or **2**).

This indicator lamp goes off on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

If the ignition has been off for more than one minute, the automatic wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards.

Malfunction

If a fault occurs with the automatic wipers, the wipers operate in intermittent mode.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

General safety recommendations

! Do not remove the labels attached in different places on your vehicle. They include safety warnings as well as identification information for the vehicle.

! For all work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

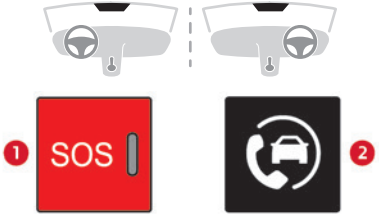
! Depending on country regulations, certain safety equipment may be mandatory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

! **Installing electrical accessories:**
– The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by CITROËN may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of approved accessories.
– As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for CITROËN dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The Manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
– Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by CITROËN or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the Manufacturer will result in the suspension of the commercial warranty.

! **Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters**
Before installing a radio communication transmitter with an external aerial, you must without fail contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

i **Declarations of conformity for radio equipment**
The relevant certificates are available on the http://service.citroen.com/ACddb/ website.

Emergency or assistance call



1. eCall (SOS)
2. ASSISTANCE

eCall (SOS)

Your vehicle may be fitted with the eCall (SOS) system either as standard or as an option.
The eCall (SOS) system provides direct access to the emergency services and is built directly into the vehicle.
According to the country of sale, the eCall (SOS) system corresponds to the systems PE112, ERAGLONASS, 999, etc.

The eCall (SOS) system is activated by default.
► In an emergency, press button **1** for more than 2 seconds.
The lit indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the emergency services*.
The eCall (SOS) system immediately locates your vehicle and puts you in contact with the appropriate emergency services**.
► Pressing again immediately cancels the request.
The indicator lamp flashes while the vehicle data is being sent, and then remains lit when communication is established.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically, irrespective of the deployment of any airbags.

i This system is a public service and is free of charge.

Operation of the system

– Upon switching on the ignition, the indicator lamp lights up red, then green, and then goes out: the system is operating correctly.
– The indicator lamp flashes red: replace the back-up battery.
– The indicator lamp is fixed red: system malfunction. The emergency and assistance call services may not work.
– If the indicator lamp does not come on when the ignition is switched on, this also means that there is a system malfunction.
If the problem persists, contact a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

i A system fault does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

i **Data processing**
All processing of personal data by the eCall (SOS) function complies with the framework for protection of personal information established by Regulation 2016/679 (General Data Protection Regulation - GDPR) and Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and the Council, and in particular, seeks to protect the vital interests of the data subject, in accordance with Article 6 (1) d) GDPR.
The processing of personal data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the eCall (SOS) function used with the “112” single European emergency call number.

The eCall (SOS) function is only able to collect and process the following data relating to the vehicle: vehicle identification number, vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle), fuel type or power source, three most recent locations and direction of travel, number of passengers and a timestamped log file of the automatic activation of the system and its timestamp.
The recipients of the processed data are the emergency call handling centres designated by the relevant national authorities in the territory in which they are located, enabling priority routing and handling of calls to the “112” emergency number.

i **Data storage**
Data contained in the system’s memory is not accessible from outside the system until a call is made. The system is not traceable and is not continuously monitored in its normal operating mode.
The data in the system's internal memory is automatically and continuously erased. Only the vehicle’s three most recent locations, necessary for the normal functioning of the system, are stored.
When an emergency call is triggered, the data log is stored for no more than 13 hours.

* In accordance with the general conditions of use of the service, available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.
** Depending on the geographic coverage of the "eCall (SOS)" and "ASSISTANCE" systems.
The list of countries covered and the telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Access to data
You have the right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or restriction of processing of any personal data not processed in accordance with the provisions of GDPR. Third parties to which data has been disclosed shall be notified of any rectification, erasure or restriction carried out in compliance with GDPR, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.
You also have the right to lodge a complaint with the respective data protection supervisory authority.
If you want to claim your above-mentioned rights please contact us per email at: privacyrights@stellantis.com.
For more information regarding our contact details please take a look at our Privacy & Cookies Policy on the brand's website.

ASSISTANCE

► If the vehicle breaks down, press button **2** for more than 2 seconds to request assistance (confirmed by a voice message*).
► Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

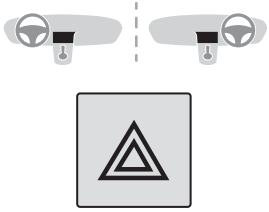
Privacy mode allows you to manage the level of sharing (data and/or location) between your vehicle and CITROËN.
It can be configured in the **Settings** touch screen menu.
By default, depending on equipment, deactivate/reactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the 2 buttons, then press the "ASSISTANCE" button to confirm.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify them to suit your wishes. In a multilingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons, in particular to improve the quality of telematic services for customers, the Manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system at any time.

If you benefit from the Citroën Connect Box offer with the SOS and Assistance Pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.
For information about the SOS and Assistance Pack, please refer to the general conditions for these services.

Hazard warning lamps



► Pressing this red button causes all the direction indicators to flash.
They can work with the ignition switched off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically. They switch off automatically when you next accelerate.
They can be switched off by pressing the button.

* Depending on the geographic coverage of the "eCall (SOS)" and "ASSISTANCE" systems and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and the telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Horn

► Press the central part of the steering wheel.

Pedestrian horn (Electric)

This system alerts pedestrians that the vehicle is approaching.
The pedestrian horn operates once the vehicle is moving and at speeds of up to 19 mph (30 km/h), in forward or reverse gear.
This function cannot be deactivated.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

The electronic stability control programme includes the following systems:
– Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).
– Emergency braking assistance (EBA).
– Anti-slip regulation (ASR).
– Dynamic stability control (DSC).
– Trailer stability assist (TSA).

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)/Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems enhance the vehicle's stability and handling during braking, and enable greater control while cornering, particularly on poor or slippery road surfaces.
ABS prevents wheel locking in the event of emergency braking.
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) manages overall braking pressure on each individual wheel.
► **When braking in an emergency, depress the pedal very firmly and maintain this pressure.**

Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.

The fixed illumination of this warning lamp signals that there is a fault with the ABS.
The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at a moderate speed.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

This warning lamp, when lit together with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, indicates an EBFD malfunction.
You must stop the vehicle.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

After an impact
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

This system reduces the emergency stopping distance, by optimising the braking pressure.
It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is depressed. The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR) / Dynamic stability control (DSC)

Anti-slip regulation (or traction control) optimises traction by using engine braking and by applying the brakes on the driving wheels to avoid one or more wheels spinning. It also enhances the vehicle's directional stability.
If there is a difference between the vehicle's trajectory and the path desired by the driver, the dynamic stability control system automatically uses engine braking and the brakes on one or more wheels to return the vehicle to the desired path, within the limits of the laws of physics.
These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.
These systems are activated in the event of a problem with grip or trajectory (confirmed by this warning lamp flashing on the instrument panel).

Deactivation / Reactivation

In exceptional conditions (moving a vehicle that is bogged down in mud, stuck in snow, on loose soil, etc.), it may prove useful to deactivate the DSC/ASR systems, so that the wheels can move freely and regain grip.
However, it is recommended that the system be reactivated as soon as possible.
These systems are reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched off, or from 31 mph (50 km/h).
At speeds below 31 mph (50 km/h), the systems can be reactivated manually.
Press this button or turn the thumbwheel to this position.
The indicator lamp in the button or thumbwheel comes on: the DSC/ASR systems no longer have an effect on engine operation.
To reactivate the system:
Press this button.
Or
Turn the thumbwheel to this position.
The indicator lamp in the button or thumbwheel goes off.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

ASR/DSC
These systems enhance safety during normal driving, but should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.
It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.
Correct operation of these systems depends on compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations relating to the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components, as well as the assembly and repair procedures provided by CITROËN dealers.
In order to ensure that these systems remain effective in wintry conditions, the use of snow or all-season tyres is recommended. All four wheels must be fitted with tyres approved for your vehicle.
All tyre specifications are listed on the tyre/paint label. For more information on **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Trailer stability assist (TSA)

When towing, this system reduces the risk of the vehicle or trailer snaking.

Operation

The system is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.
The electronic stability control system (ESC) must not have any faults.
The vehicle speed must be between 37 and 99 mph (60 and 160 km/h).
If the system detects that the trailer is snaking, it applies the brakes to stabilise the trailer and reduces engine power, if necessary, to slow the vehicle (indicated by the flashing of this warning lamp on the instrument panel and the brake lamps coming on).
For information on weights and towed loads, refer to the **Engine technical data and towed loads** section or your vehicle's registration certificate.
To ensure safe driving with a **Towing device**, refer to the corresponding section.

Malfunction

If a fault occurs, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.
To continue towing a trailer, reduce speed and drive carefully!
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The trailer stability control system provides an extra safety feature under normal driving conditions, when following the recommendations for use of trailers and current legislation in force in your country. It must not encourage the driver to take extra risks, such as using a trailer in unsuitable conditions of operation (e.g. excessive load, exceeded nose weight, worn or under-inflated tyres, faulty braking system) or driving at excessive speed.
In certain cases, the system may not detect trailer snaking, particularly with a light trailer.
When driving on slippery or poor surfaces, the system may not be able to prevent sudden trailer snaking.

Advanced Grip Control

(Depending on version)
A special, patented traction control system, which improves driveability on snow, mud and sand.
This system, optimised for operation in a range of conditions, enables you to manoeuvre in most slippery conditions (encountered during normal passenger car use).
When combined with all-season Peak Mountain Snow Flake tyres, this system offers a compromise between safety, grip and driveability.
When combined with suitable tyres, this system offers a compromise between safety, grip and driveability.
The accelerator pedal should be pressed sufficiently to allow the system to harness the power of the engine. Operation at high engine speeds is completely normal.
A five-position selector knob allows you to choose the setting best suited to the driving conditions encountered.
An indicator lamp associated with each mode comes on, accompanied by the display of a message to confirm your choice.

Operating modes

Standard (ESC)

This mode is calibrated for a low level of wheel spin, based on the different levels of grip normally encountered on the road.

i Whenever the ignition is switched off, the system automatically resets to this mode.

Snow

This mode adapts its strategy to the conditions of grip encountered for each of the two front wheels on moving off.
(mode active up to 50 mph (80 km/h))

All terrain (mud, damp grass, etc.)

This mode, when moving off, allows considerable spin on the wheel with the least grip to optimise clearing of the mud and to regain grip. At the same time, the wheel with the most grip is controlled in such a way as to transmit as much torque as possible.
When moving, the system optimises wheel spin to respond to the driver's requirements as fully as possible.
(mode active up to 31 mph (50 km/h))

Sand

This mode allows little spin on the two driving wheels at the same time to allow the vehicle to move forward and limit the risks of getting stuck in the sand.
(mode active up to 75 mph (120 km/h))

! Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.

Deactivation

OFF You can deactivate the ASR and DSC systems by turning the knob to the "**OFF**" position.

i The ASR and DSC systems will no longer act on the operation of the engine or of the brakes in the event of a change of trajectory.
These systems are reactivated automatically from 31 mph (50 km/h) and whenever the ignition is switched on.

! **Recommendations**
Your vehicle is designed principally to drive on tarmac roads but it allows you to occasionally drive on other less passable terrain.
However, it does not permit off-road driving such as:
– crossing and driving on terrain which could damage the underbody or strip away components (fuel pipe, fuel cooler, etc.) due to obstacles or stones in particular,
– driving on terrain with steep gradients and poor grip,
– crossing a stream.

Hill Assist Descent Control

Hill Assist Descent Control system for medium to steep slopes, on tarmac or other road surfaces (e.g. gravel, mud).
This system reduces the risk of slip or loss of control of the vehicle when descending, whether going forward or in reverse.

During a descent, the system assists the driver in maintaining a constant speed, depending on the gear engaged, while progressively releasing the brakes.

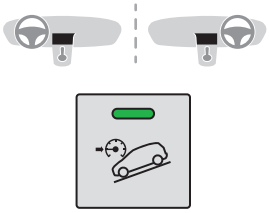
i For the system to activate, the gradient must be greater than 5%.
The system can be used with the gearbox in neutral.
Otherwise, engage a gear corresponding to the speed to prevent the engine stalling.
With an automatic gearbox, the system can be used with the selector at **N**, **D** or **R**.

! When the system is regulating, the Active Safety Brake system is automatically deactivated.

i The system is no longer available if the speed of the vehicle is:
– above 43 mph (70 km/h).
– managed by the Adaptive cruise control, depending on the type of gearbox.

Switching on

By default, the system is not selected.
The state of the function is not saved when the ignition is switched off.



► To select the system, at speeds below 31 mph (50 km/h), press this button until its lamp lights up; this indicator lamp appears in green on the instrument panel.
The system becomes active at speeds below 19 mph (30 km/h).
► When the vehicle begins its descent, the driver can release the accelerator and brake pedals; the system regulates the speed:
– If the gearbox is in first or second gear, the speed decreases and the indicator lamp flashes rapidly.
– If the gearbox is in neutral or if the clutch pedal is depressed, the speed decreases and the indicator lamp flashes slowly; in this case, the maintained descent speed is lower.
On a downward slope, with the vehicle stationary, if the driver releases the accelerator and brake pedals, the system will release the brakes to set the vehicle gradually in motion.
The brake lamps light up automatically when the system is regulating.
If the speed exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h), regulation is paused automatically, the indicator lamp goes back to grey in the instrument panel, but the green indicator lamp in the button remains on.
Regulation resumes automatically when the speed falls below 19 mph (30 km/h) again, if the slope and pedal release conditions are met.
You can depress the accelerator or brake pedal again at any time.

Switching off

► Press the button until its indicator lamp goes off; the indicator lamp on the instrument panel goes off.
At speeds above 43 mph (70 km/h), the system is automatically deactivated; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp comes on in green on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Seat belts

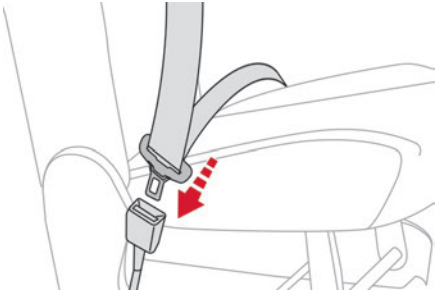
Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning system and force limiter.
This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact. Depending on the severity of the impact, the pyrotechnic pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.
The pyrotechnic pretensioning seat belts are enabled when the ignition is on.
The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.

The front seat belts are fitted with a **single** pyrotechnic pretensioning system (or **double** on the driver's side, depending on equipment) and a force limiter (or **progressive force limiter** on the driver's side, depending on equipment options).
This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact.
Depending on the severity of the impact, the **single** pyrotechnic pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.
The **double** pyrotechnic pretensionsining system operates the same way, except that it uses two anchor points rather than one, for enhanced effectiveness.
The pyrotechnic pretensioning seat belts are enabled when the ignition is on.

The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.
The **progressive force limiter** operates in the same way, except that it takes the driver's stature into consideration, thus optimising the reduction in the pressure exerted by the seat belt on the occupant's chest in the event of an impact.

Fastening



► Pull the strap, then insert the tongue into the buckle.
► Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling on the strap.

Unfastening

► Press the red button on the buckle.
► Guide the seat belt as it is reeled in.

Two-seat front bench seat

If the vehicle is fitted with a front bench seat, ensure that each seat belt is used with its correct buckle.
Do not interchange the driver's seat belt or buckle with the centre seat belt or buckle.

Rear seat belts

Each rear seat is equipped with a seat belt but no pyrotechnic pretensioning system or force limiter.
Take care to insert each seatbelt into its matching buckle.
Do not interchange the belts or buckles for the outer seats with the belt or buckle for the centre seat.

Rear seat belts (row 2)

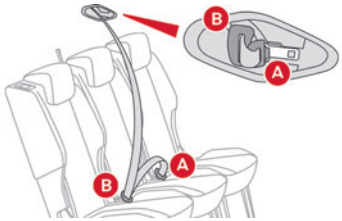
Outer seats

Depending on equipment, they may be fitted with a single pretensioning system and force limiters. Be sure to put the correct seat belt in the correct buckle.
Do not interchange the belts or buckles for the outer seats with the belt or buckle for the centre seat.

Centre seat

The seat belt does not have a pyrotechnic pretensioning system and force limiters.

Installation



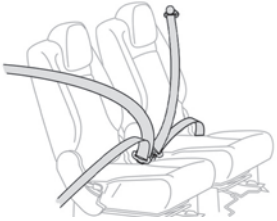
► Pull the strap and insert the tongue **A** into the right buckle (located on the passenger's left side when seated in the vehicle).
► Insert the tongue **B** into the left buckle (located on the passenger's right side when seated in the vehicle).
► Check that each buckle is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Removal and storage

► Press the red button on buckle **B**, then the button on buckle **A**.
► Guide the strap as it reels in and take tongue **B**, then **A** to the magnet at the anchoring point on the roof.

> **!** Before performing any operations on the rear seats, to avoid damage to the seat belts check that the lateral belts are properly tensioned. The central seat belt must be completely reeled in.

Rear seat belts (row 3)



These seat belts are not fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning system or force limiter.

Seat belt(s) warning lamps

1. Seat belt not fastened/unfastened warning lamp
2. Front left-hand seat belt not fastened/ unfastened warning lamp (or driver's seat belt, depending on country of sale).
3. Front right-hand seat belt not fastened/ unfastened warning lamp (or driver's seat belt, depending on country of sale).
4. Front centre seat belt (row 1) not fastened/ unfastened warning lamp.
5. Rear left-hand seat belt (row 2) not fastened/ unfastened warning lamp.

6. Rear centre seat belt (row 2) not fastened/ unfastened warning lamp.
7. Rear right-hand seat belt (row 2) not fastened/unfastened warning lamp.

Not fastened at the front

When the ignition is switched on, warning lamp **1** lights up on the instrument panel (depending on version) and the corresponding indicator lamp (**2**, **3** or **4** (depending on version)) lights up if the driver and/or front passenger have not fastened their seat belts.
At a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h), these warning lamps flash, accompanied by an increasing audible signal for approximately two minutes. After two minutes, these warning lamps remain on as long as the front seatbelts are not fastened.

Not fastened at the rear

When the ignition is switched on, with the engine running or the vehicle moving at a speed below 12 mph (20 km/h), warning lamp **1** (depending on version) and the corresponding indicator lamps (**5** to **7**) light up for around sixty seconds, if one or more rear seat belts (row 2) are not fastened.

There are no seat belt warning lamps for row 3.

Unfastened

After the ignition is switched on, warning lamp **1** (depending on version) and the corresponding indicator lamps light up if the driver and/or one or more passengers unfasten their seat belts.
At a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h), these warning lamps flash, accompanied by an audible signal for approximately two minutes. After this time, these warning lamps remain on as long as the seatbelts are not refastened.

Advice

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.
Wherever seated in the vehicle, you must always fasten the seat belt, even for short journeys.
Do not invert the seat belt buckles, as they will not fulfil their role properly.
To ensure the proper functioning of the belt buckles, make sure that there are no foreign bodies present (e.g. a coin) before fastening.
Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.
After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Installation
The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible over the pelvis.
The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.
At the front, adjusting the position of the seat belt may require the seat height to be adjusted.
In order to be effective, a seat belt must:
– be tightened as close to the body as possible.
– be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it is not twisted.
– must only be used to secure one person.
– not show signs of tearing or fraying.
– not be changed or modified, in order to avoid affecting its performance.

Recommendations for children
Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than 1.5 metres.
Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.
Never carry a child on your lap.
For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

Maintenance
In accordance with current safety regulations, for all work on your vehicle's seat belts, contact a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

Have the seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.
Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.

In the event of an impact
Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impacts, the pyrotechnic device may trigger before and independently of airbag deployment. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.
Following an impact, have the seat belt system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

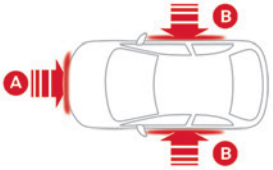
Airbags

General information

This system is designed to improve the safety of the occupants of the front seats and the rear outer seats in the event of a violent collision. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts equipped with a force limiting system.
Electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:
– In the event of violent impact, the airbags deploy instantly and help better protect the occupants of the vehicle; immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly in order not to hinder the visibility or the possible exit of the occupants.
– In the event of a slight impact, a rear impact and under certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not deploy; only the seat belt helps to protect you in these situations.
The seriousness of the impact depends on the nature of the obstacle and the speed of the vehicle at the moment of collision.

The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.
This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

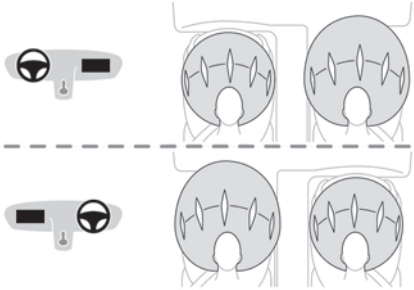
Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone
B. Side impact zone

When one or more airbags are deployed, the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system makes a noise and releases a small quantity of smoke.
This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience irritation.
The detonation noise associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags

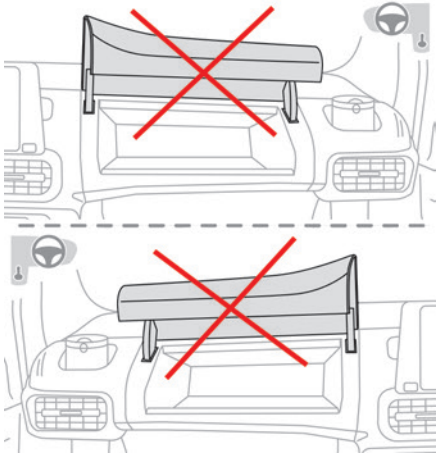


This system protects the driver and front passenger(s) in the event of a serious front impact, limiting the risk of head and chest injury.
The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger airbag is fitted in the roof.

With the two-seat front bench seat, the passenger sitting in the centre is also protected.

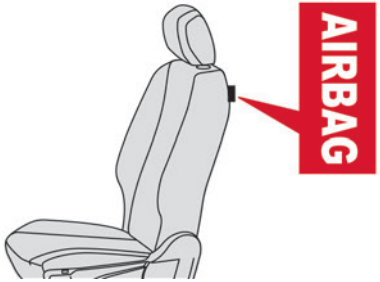
Deployment

They are deployed, except for the front passenger airbag if it is deactivated*, in the event of a violent front impact applied to all or part of front impact zone **A**.
The front airbag inflates between the chest and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, on the driver's side, and the dashboard, on the passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.



! **When driving**, keep the storage compartment closed. Otherwise, there is a risk of injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Lateral airbags



This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact, limiting the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder.
Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, on the door side.

Deployment

The lateral airbags are deployed on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**.
The lateral airbag inflates between the chest of the vehicle's occupant and the corresponding door panel.

Curtain airbags

* For more information on Deactivating the front passenger airbag, refer to the corresponding section.

If fitted to the vehicle, this system offers enhanced protection for the driver and passenger in the event of a serious side impact, limiting the risk of injury to the side of the head.
Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

With the two-seat front bench seat, the passenger sitting in the centre is not protected.

If fitted to the vehicle, this system offers enhanced protection for the driver and passengers (except in the central seats) in the event of a serious side impact, limiting the risk of injury to the side of the head.
Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

It deploys simultaneously with the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**.
The curtain airbag inflates between the front and rear occupants of the vehicle and the corresponding windows.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.
The airbags may not be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

In the event of a minor impact or bump at the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed.
In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

Advice

For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.
Adopt a normal and upright sitting position.
Fasten your seat belt and position it correctly.
Do not place anything between the occupants and the airbags (e.g. child, animal, object), do not fix or attach anything near or in the path of the airbags, as this could cause injuries when they are deployed.
Do not place objects on the dashboard.
Never modify the original definition of the vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.
Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms cannot be ruled out when an airbag is deployed. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time, discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.
After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the airbag systems checked.
All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop

Front airbags
Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.
Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.
Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.
Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.
Do not fix or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, as this could cause injuries when the airbags are deployed.

Lateral airbags
Use only approved seat covers compatible with the deployment of these airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer.
Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (e.g. clothing) as this could cause injuries to the chest or arm when the airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.
The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.
A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors - risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!
All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop

Curtain airbags
Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.
Do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, as these help to secure the curtain airbags.

Child seats

The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:
– In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than 1,5 metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
– **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
– **Children weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearward facing" position, whether in the front or rear of the vehicle.**

It is recommended that children travel on the **rear seats** of the vehicle:
– '**rearward facing**' up to the age of 3,
– '**forward facing**' over the age of 3.

Make sure that the seat belt is correctly positioned and tightened.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.

An incorrectly installed child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident.
Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.
Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harness keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.
When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the vehicle seat. If the passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.
Remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.
Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Installing a booster seat
The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
Use a booster seat with a backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

Additional protections
To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock".
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.
To protect young children from the sun's rays, fit side blinds on the rear windows.
As a safety measure, do not leave:
– A child alone and unsupervised inside a vehicle.

– A child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed.
– The keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

Child seat at the rear

Row 2

Forward-facing or rearward-facing

► Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward-facing or rearward-facing child seat itself do not touch the vehicle's front seat.
► Check that the backrest of the forward-facing child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's rear seat, and ideally in contact with it.

► Adjust the rear seat (in row 2) to the fully back longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened.

ℹ Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the vehicle's front seat.

Row 3

If a child seat is installed on a passenger seat in the third row, move the seat to its rearmost longitudinal position with the backrest straightened, so that the child seat and the child's legs do not touch the seats in the second row.

! Never fit a child seat with a support leg in the third row.

Child seat at the front

► Adjust the front passenger seat to the **highest** and **fully back longitudinal position**, **with the backrest straightened**.

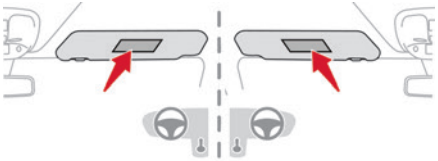
"Forward facing"

! You must leave the front passenger airbag active.

"Rearward facing"

! The front passenger airbag must be deactivated before installing a rearward facing child seat. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed**.

Warning label - Front passenger airbag



You must comply with the following instruction, as reminded by the warning label on both sides of the passenger sun visor:

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

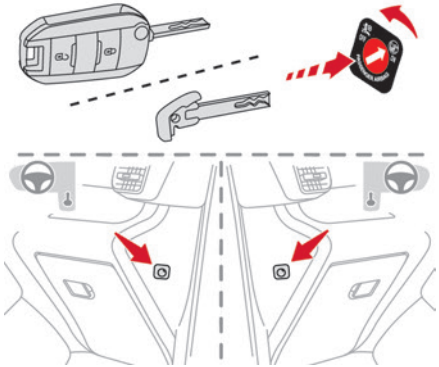
! To ensure the safety of the child, the front passenger airbag MUST be deactivated when a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed in the event of deployment of the airbag.

! **Vehicles not equipped with a deactivation/reactivation control**
Installing a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat or bench seat is strictly prohibited - risk of death or serious injury in the event of airbag deployment!

! With the **Extenso Cab** or the **Crew cab**, deactivate the front passenger airbag when transporting long objects.

Deactivating/Reactivating the front passenger airbag

For vehicles on which it is fitted, the switch is located on the side of the dashboard.



With the ignition off:

► To deactivate the airbag, turn the key in the switch to the "**OFF**" position.

► To reactivate it, turn the key to the "**ON**" position.

When the ignition is switched on:

This warning lamp comes on and remains lit to signal deactivation.

Or

This warning lamp comes on for about 1 minute to signal activation.

Recommended child seats

Range of child seats secured using a **three-point seat belt**.

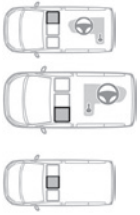
Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg
L1 "RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus" Installed in the "rearward facing" position.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg
L5 "RÖMER KIDFIX XP" Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt. Only suitable for installation on the side rear seats. The head restraint on the vehicle seat must be removed.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg
L6 "GRACO Booster" The child is restrained by the seat belt. Only suitable for installation on the front passenger seat or on the rear side seats.

Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, the table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using a seat belt and universally approved **(c)** according to the weight of the child and the seating position in the vehicle.

			Child weight and age guide			
Seats			**Under 13 kg** (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	**15-25 kg** (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	**22-36 kg** (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Cab/Row 1 (a)	With individual seat, passenger seat		/			
	With bench seat, outer or central passenger seat 	With passenger airbag deactivated "OFF"	**U**			
		With passenger airbag activated "ON"	**X**	**UF**		

Key

(a) Refer to the current legislation in the country in which you are driving before placing a child in this seat position.
(b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Carrycots and "car" infant carriers must not be installed on the front passenger seat(s).

(c) Universal child seat: child seat suitable for installation in all vehicles using the seat belt.
U Seat position suitable for installing a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved for rearward-facing and/or forward-facing use.
UF Seat position suitable for installing a child seat secured using a seat belt and universally approved for forward-facing use.
X Seat position not suitable for installing a child seat for the stated weight class.

			Child weight and age guide			
Seat			**Under 13 kg** (groups 0 **(d)** and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	**15-25 kg** (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	**22-36 kg** (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Row 1 **(a)**	Fixed passenger seat		**X**			
	Passenger seat with forwards and backwards adjustment	With passenger airbag deactivated "OFF"	**U (f)**			
		With passenger airbag activated "ON"	**X**	**UF (f)**		
Row 2 **(b) (e)**			**U**			
Row 3 **(b) (e)**			**U (g) (h)**			

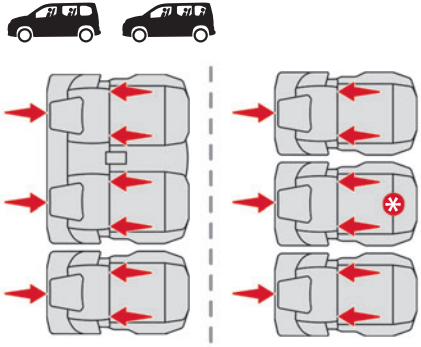
Key

(a) Refer to the current legislation in the country in which you are driving before placing a child in this seat position.
(b) To install a rearward-facing or forward-facing child seat on a rear seat, adjust the rear seat to the fully back position with the backrest straightened.
(c) Universal child seat: child seat suitable for installation in all vehicles using the seat belt.
(d) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Carrycots and "car" infant carriers must not be installed on the front passenger seat(s) or the seats in row 3.
(e) To install a rearward-facing or forward-facing child seat on a rear seat, move the seats in front of it forward, then straighten their backrests to allow sufficient room for the child seat and the child's legs.

(f) With the fixed passenger seat (which cannot be placed in the folded position), adjust the backrest angle to 0°.
For more information on the **Front seats** and, in particular, the folded position for the backrest, refer to the corresponding section.
(g) On the **M** version, fold down the backrests in row 2.
(h) Installing child seats with a support leg is prohibited in the third row.
U Seat position suitable for installing a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved for rearward-facing and/or forward-facing use.
UF Seat position suitable for installing a child seat secured using a seat belt and universally approved for forward-facing use.
X Seat position not suitable for installing a child seat for the stated weight class.

"ISOFIX" mountings

Row 2



* On some versions, the central seat is not equipped with ISOFIX mountings.

The vehicle has been approved in accordance with the latest ISOFIX regulation.
If fitted on the vehicle, the regulation ISOFIX mountings are identified by labels.
There are three rings for each seat:
– Two front rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat backrest and cushion, indicated by an "ISOFIX" marking,
– If fitted to your vehicle, a rear ring **B**, located behind the vehicle's seat, called Top Tether, for securing the upper strap, indicated by a "Top Tether" marking.
The Top Tether secures the upper strap of child seats fitted with them. In case of frontal impact, this device limits the extent to which the child seat can tilt forward.
This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in the vehicle.
The ISOFIX child seats are fitted with two latches which are secured on the two front rings **A**.
Some child seats also have an upper strap which is attached to rear ring **B**.
To secure the child seat to the Top Tether:
– remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat on this seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed),
– pass the strap of the child seat over the top of the seat backrest, centring it between the openings for the head restraint rods,
– attach the hook of the upper strap to rear ring **B**,
– tighten the upper strap.

! Incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle can compromise a child's safety in the event of an accident.
Strictly follow the fitting instructions provided in the installation guide supplied with the child seat.

Recommended ISOFIX child seats

i Also consult the user guide from the child seat's manufacturer to find out how to install and remove the seat.

"RÖMER Baby-Safe and its ISOFIX base" (size category: **E**)
Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg
Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**. The base has a support leg, height-adjustable, which rests on the vehicle's floor. This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.

"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX" (size category: **B1**)
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg
Suitable for forward-facing installation only. Attached to rings **A** and ring **B**, referred to as TOP TETHER, using an upper strap. Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying down. This child seat can also be used in seat positions not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt. Adjust the front seat of the vehicle so that the child's feet do not touch the backrest.

Locations for ISOFIX child seats

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on vehicle seats fitted with ISOFIX mountings. In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

		Weight of the child/indicative age											
		Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		**Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to about 1 year old			**From 9 - 18 kg (group 1)** From about 1 to 3 years old						
Type of ISOFIX child seat		**Carrycot**		**"rearward facing"**			**"rearward facing"**		**"forward facing"**				
ISOFIX size category		**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**	**B2**	**B3**
Row 1 **(a)**		Not ISOFIX											
Row 2 **(b)**	Rear seat behind the driver	**IL (c)**		**IL**					**IUF/IL**				
	Centre rear seat **(f)** and seat behind the front passenger			**IL (d)**									
Row 3 **(b) (e)**		Not ISOFIX											

Key

(a) Refer to the current legislation in the country in which you are driving before placing a child in this seat position.
(b) To install a rearward-facing or forward-facing child seat on a rear seat, adjust the rear seat to the fully back position with the backrest straightened.
(c) Installing a carrycot on this seat may prevent the use of one or more of the other seats in this row.
(d) Adjust the front passenger seat without height adjuster to the fully back position.

(e) Installing child seats with a support leg is prohibited in the third row.
(f) On some versions, the central seat is not equipped with ISOFIX mountings.
IUF Seat suitable for installing a forward-facing ISOFIX Universal seat secured using the upper strap.
IL Seat suitable for an ISOFIX Semi-Universal child seat, which may be either:
– rearward-facing, fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.
– "forward facing" fitted with a support leg.
– a carrycot fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.
For more information on **ISOFIX child seats** and in particular on securing the upper strap, refer to the corresponding section.

i-Size child seats

i-Size child seats have two latches that are anchored to the two rings **A**.
These i-Size child seats also have:
– either an upper strap that is attached to ring **B**.
– or a support leg that rests on the vehicle floor, compatible with the approved i-Size seat position.
Their role is to prevent the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a collision.
For more information on the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Locations for i-Size child seats

In accordance with the new European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing i-Size child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with i-Size approved ISOFIX mountings.

Seat position		i-Size child restraint system
Row 1 **(a)**	Passenger seat	Not i-Size
Row 2 **(b) (c) (d)**		i-U
Row 3 **(b)**		Not i-Size

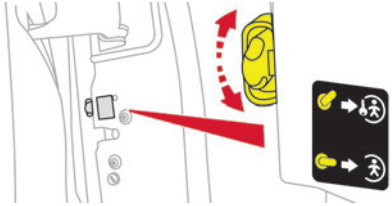
Key

(a) Refer to the current legislation in the country in which you are driving before placing a child in this seat position.
(b) To install a rearward-facing or forward-facing child seat on a rear seat, adjust the rear seat to the fully back position with the backrest straightened.

(c) Adjust the front seat to its maximum height.
(d) On some versions, the central seat is not equipped with ISOFIX mountings.
i-U Suitable for forward-facing and rearward-facing "Universal" i-Size restraint systems.
i-UF Only suitable for forward-facing "Universal" i-Size restraint systems.

Manual child lock

Mechanical system to prevent opening of the sliding side door using its interior lever.



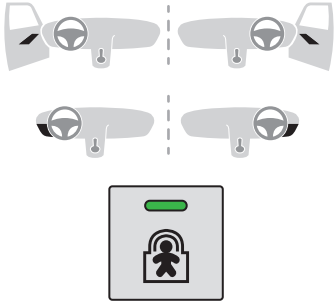
Locking/Unlocking

► Rotate the control located on the edge of the side door **up** to **lock** it, or **down** to **unlock** it.

Electric child lock

Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors (sliding side door(s), side-hinged doors or tailgate) using their interior controls.

Activation/Deactivation



► With the ignition on, press this button to activate/deactivate the child lock.
When the indicator lamp is on, the child lock is activated.

! Any other status of the indicator lamp indicates a malfunction of the electric child lock.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i With the child lock activated, it is still possible to open the doors from outside.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control.
Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition.
Always keep the electronic key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.
In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is switched off automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

Driving recommendations

► Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
► Monitor your environment and keep your hands on the wheel to be able to react to anything that may happen any time.
► Drive smoothly, anticipate the need for braking and maintain a longer safety distance, especially in bad weather.
► Stop the vehicle before performing operations that require sustained attention (e.g. settings).
► During long trips, take a break every 2 hours.

Important!

! **Never leave the engine running in a closed space without sufficient ventilation.** Internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

! In very severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), let the engine run for 4 minutes before moving off, to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle (engine and gearbox).

! **Never drive with the parking brake applied**. Risk of overheating and damaging the braking system!

! **Never park the vehicle and never leave the engine running on a flammable surface (e.g. dry grass, dead leaves).**The vehicle exhaust system is very hot, even several minutes after the engine stops. Risk of fire!

! **Never drive on surfaces covered with vegetation (e.g. tall grass, accumulated dead leaves, crops, debris) such as a field, a country lane overgrown with bushes or a grassy verge.**
This vegetation could come into contact with the vehicle's exhaust system or other systems which are very hot. Risk of fire!

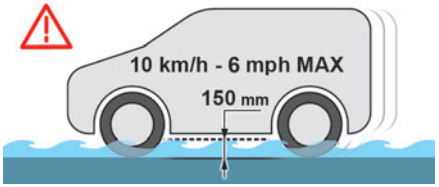
! Make sure you do not leave any item in the passenger compartment which could act like a magnifying glass under the effect of the sun's rays and cause a fire. Risk of fire or damage to interior surfaces!

! **Never leave the vehicle unattended, with the engine running**. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P** (depending on the type of gearbox).

! **Never leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised**.

On flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to your vehicle's electrical systems.



If the vehicle absolutely must drive through a flooded section of road:
► Check that the depth of the water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users.
► Deactivate the Stop & Start function.
► Drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h).
► Do not stop and do not switch off the engine.
On leaving the flooded road, as soon as safety conditions allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.
If in doubt about the state of your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Noise (Electric)

On the outside

Due to the vehicle's quiet operation when driving, the driver must pay particular attention. When manoeuvring, the driver must always check the vehicle's immediate surroundings. At speeds of up to 19 mph (30 km/h), the pedestrian horn warns other road users of the vehicle's presence.

Cooling the traction battery
The cooling fan comes on during charging to cool the on-board charger and the traction battery.

On the inside

During use, you may hear certain perfectly normal noises specific to electric vehicles, such as:
– Traction battery relay when starting.
– Vacuum pump when braking.
– Vehicle tyres or aerodynamics when driving.
– Jolting and knocking noise during hill starts.

Towing

Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and particular care must be taken.

Do not exceed the maximum towable weights.
At altitude: reduce the maximum load by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude; the lower air density at high altitudes decreases engine performance.

New vehicle: do not tow a trailer until the vehicle has driven at least 620 miles (1,000 kilometres).

If the outside temperature is high, let the engine idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to help it to cool.

Before setting off

Nose weight

► Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight (at the point where it joins your vehicle) approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Tyres

► Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

► Check the electrical signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

If a genuine CITROËN towing device is used, the rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid the audible signal.

When driving

Cooling

Towing a trailer uphill causes the coolant temperature to increase. The maximum towable load depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature. The fan's cooling capacity does not increase with engine speed.
► Reduce speed and lower the engine speed to limit the amount of heating produced.
► Pay constant attention to the coolant temperature.

If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Brakes

Using the engine brake is recommended to limit the overheating of the brakes. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.

Side wind

Bear in mind that the vehicle will be more susceptible to wind when towing.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic immobiliser

The remote control contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.
A few seconds after switching off the ignition, this system locks the engine control system, therefore preventing the engine from being started in the event of a break-in.
In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message on the screen. The vehicle will not start; contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

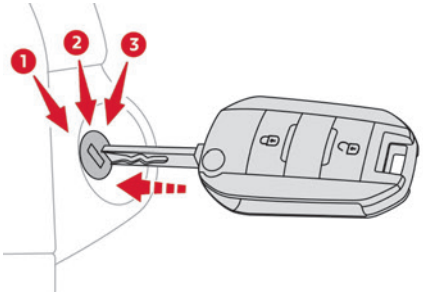
Starting/switching off the engine

Starting

The parking brake must be applied.

► **With a manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral, fully depress the clutch pedal and keep the pedal down until the engine starts.
► **With an automatic gearbox**, place the selector in position **P** then depress the brake pedal.

With the conventional key / With the remote control key



1. **Stop** position.
2. **Ignition on** position.
3. **Starting** position.

► Insert the key into the ignition switch. The system recognises the starting code.
► Unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering wheel and the key.

> In certain circumstances, you may have to turn the steering wheel firmly to move the wheels (if the wheels are against a kerb, for example).

► Turn the key to position **2**, Ignition On, to activate the engine pre-heating system.
► Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel, then turn the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, to operate the starter motor until the engine starts. As soon as the engine starts, release the key so it returns to position **2**.

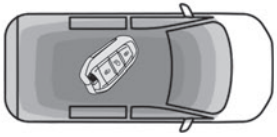
> The warning lamp does not come on if the engine is already warm. In some climatic conditions, the following recommendations should be followed:
> – In mild conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

> – Depending on version, if the air conditioning is activated and the exterior temperature exceeds 35 °C, the engine's idle speed may increase, up to 1,300 rpm, depending on the cooling requirements.
> – In wintry conditions, the pre-heater warning lamp will stay on for a longer period after switching on the ignition; wait until it goes off before starting.
> – In **very severe wintry conditions** (temperature below -23 °C), to ensure correct operation and durability of your vehicle's mechanical components (engine and gearbox), **leave the engine running for 4 minutes** before moving off.
> Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

With **Petrol engines**, after a cold start, pre-heating the catalytic converter can cause noticeable engine vibrations when stationary, with the engine running, for anything up to 2 minutes (accelerated idle speed).

If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition.
Wait a few seconds before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after several attempts, do not keep trying: you risk damaging the starter motor and the engine.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

With the Keyless Entry and Start



► Place the remote control inside the vehicle, in the recognition zone.

► Press the "**START/STOP**" button.

With a manual gearbox, the steering column unlocks and the engine starts more or less instantly.

With the EAT8 automatic gearbox, the engine starts more or less instantly.

The warning lamp does not come on if the engine is already warm. In some climatic conditions, it is advised to follow the recommendations below:
– In mild conditions, do not leave the engine to warm up while stationary, but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

– Depending on version, if the air conditioning is activated and when the exterior temperature exceeds 35°C, the idle engine speed can accelerate up to 1,300 rpm depending on the air conditioning requirements.
– In wintry conditions, when the ignition is switched on, the duration of lighting of the preheating indicator lamp is extended. Wait until it goes off before starting the engine.
– In **very severe wintry conditions** (temperature below -23°C), to ensure correct operation and preserve the lifespan of the vehicle's mechanical components, engine and gearbox, **leave the engine running for 4 minutes** before moving off.
Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

With **Petrol engines**, after a cold start, pre-heating the catalytic converter can cause noticeable engine vibrations when stationary, with the engine running, for anything up to 2 minutes (accelerated idle speed).

For **Diesel vehicles**, when the temperature is below zero, starting will only occur once the pre-heating warning lamp goes off.
If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the "START/STOP" button, keep the brake or clutch pedal depressed until the warning lamp goes off, without pressing the "START/STOP" button again, until the engine starts and is running.

The "Keyless Entry and Start" system remote control must be within the recognition zone.
Never leave the vehicle with the engine running and with the remote control on your person.
If the remote control leaves the recognition zone, a message is displayed.
Move the remote control into the zone in order to be able to start the engine.

If one of the starting conditions is not met, a message is displayed on the instrument panel. In some circumstances, you

must turn the steering wheel while pressing the "START/STOP" button to assist unlocking of the steering column. A message is displayed.

Switching off

► Immobilise the vehicle, with the engine at idle.
► With a manual gearbox, ideally put the gear lever into neutral.
► With an automatic gearbox, ideally select position **P**.

With the conventional key/With the remote control key

► Turn the key all the way to position **1 (Stop)** and remove it from the ignition.
► To lock the steering column, turn the steering wheel until it locks.

i To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

► Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.

! Never switch off the ignition before the complete immobilisation of the vehicle. With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also turned off: risk of loss of control of the vehicle.

i As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle without taking the remote control with you, even for a short time.

i Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

Key left in the ignition

i When opening the driver's door, an alert message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, to remind you that the key is still in the ignition switch at position **1 (Stop)**.
If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.
To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

With Keyless Entry and Start

► With the remote control in the recognition zone, press the "**START/STOP**" button.
With a manual gearbox, the engine stops and the steering column locks.
With the EAT8 automatic gearbox, the engine stops.

i If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

! To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
– only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
– never place one mat on top of another.
The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control / speed limiter.
The mats approved by CITROËN have two fixings located below the seat.

Starting/Switching off the electric motor

Starting

The drive selector must be in mode **P**.
► If using a conventional or remote control key, depress the brake pedal and turn the key to position **3** until the motor starts, without depressing the accelerator. As soon as the motor starts, release the key so it returns to position **2**.
► If using Keyless Entry and Start, depress the brake pedal and briefly press the "**START/STOP**" button.
► Keep your foot on the brake pedal until the **READY** indicator lamp comes on and an audible signal is emitted, indicating that the vehicle is ready to drive.

► With your foot on the brake, select mode **D** or **R**.
► Release the brake pedal, then accelerate.
On starting, the instrument panel lights up and the power indicator cursor moves to the "neutral" position. The steering column automatically unlocks (you may hear a sound and feel the steering wheel move).

Switching off

► If using a conventional or remote control key, turn the key fully to position **1 (Stop)**.
► If using Keyless Entry and Start, press the "**START/STOP**" button.
Before exiting the vehicle, check that:
– The drive selector is in mode **P**.
– The **READY** indicator lamp is off.

> The drive selector moves automatically to mode **P** when the motor is switched off or when the driver's door is opened.

> If the driver's door is opened while the required conditions for switching off are not met, an audible signal is emitted, accompanied by the display of a warning message.

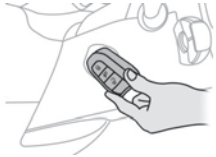
Special case with Keyless Entry and Start

Switching on the ignition with Keyless Entry and Start

With the "Keyless Entry and Start" electronic key inside the vehicle, pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, **without depressing any of the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on.
► Press this button again to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

Back-up starting

A back-up reader is fitted to the steering column, to enable the engine to be started if the system fails to detect the key in the recognition zone, or if the battery in the electronic key is flat.



► Place and hold the remote control against the back-up reader.
► **With a manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral, then fully depress the clutch pedal.
► **With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector**, select mode **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
► Press the "**START/STOP**" button.
The engine starts.

Remote control not recognised with Keyless Entry and Start

If the remote control is no longer in the recognition zone, a message appears on the instrument panel when closing a door or trying to switch off the engine.
► Press the "**START/STOP**" button for about 3 seconds to confirm switching off the engine, then contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

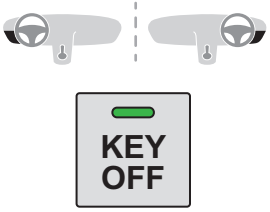
Forced switch-off with Keyless Entry and Start

In case of emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions (even when driving).

► To do this, press and hold the "**START/STOP**" button for about 5 seconds.
In this case, the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

"Key off" mode

"**Key off**" mode allows you to lock the vehicle while leaving the engine running without the key or Keyless Entry and Start being inside the vehicle.
This mode allows electrical devices to continue operating to ensure thermal comfort, vehicle security and operation of the vehicle systems needed for the task.



► To activate or deactivate this mode, press this button (the button's indicator lamp is on when the mode is activated).

i With an electric motor, this mode remains active for about 10 minutes after the vehicle is locked.

Manual parking brake

Application

► With your foot on the brake pedal, pull the parking brake lever up to immobilise your vehicle.

Release on level ground

► With your foot on the brake pedal, pull the parking brake lever up gently, press the release button, then lower the lever fully.

When the vehicle is being driven, this warning lamp coming on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, indicates that the parking brake is still applied or has not been fully released.

! When parking on a slope or on a steep slope with a loaded vehicle, turn the wheels against the kerb then apply the parking brake.

i Pressing the brake pedal facilitates the application and release of the manual parking brake.

! With a manual gearbox, engage a gear and then switch off the ignition.

! With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector in position **P**, then switch off the ignition.

Electric parking brake

In automatic mode, this system applies the parking brake when the engine is switched off and releases it when the vehicle moves off.

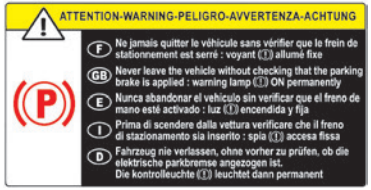
At any time, with the engine running:
► To apply the parking brake, briefly pull the control.
► To release it, briefly push the control while pressing the brake pedal.
Automatic mode is activated by default.
This automatic operation can be deactivated in certain situations.

Indicator lamp

This indicator lamp comes on both on the instrument panel and on the control to confirm that the parking brake has been applied, accompanied by display of the message "**Parking brake applied**".
The indicator lamp goes out to confirm the release of the parking brake, accompanied by the display of the message "**Parking brake released**".

The indicator lamp flashes in response to a manual request to apply or release the brake.

! In the event of a battery failure, the electric parking brake will not operate.
As a safety measure, with a manual gearbox, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by engaging a gear.
As a safety measure, with an automatic gearbox or drive selector, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by placing the supplied chock against one of the wheels.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



! Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied: the parking brake indicator lamps on the instrument panel and the control must be on fixed.
If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

! Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle, as they could release the parking brake.

! **When the vehicle is parked: on a steep slope, heavily loaded or during towing**
With a manual gearbox, turn the wheels toward the pavement and engage a gear.
With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector, turn the wheels toward the pavement and select mode **P**.
When towing, the vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.

Manual operation

Manual release

With the ignition on or engine running:
► Press the brake pedal.
► While maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, briefly push the control.

i If the brake pedal is not depressed, the parking brake is not released and a message is displayed.

Manual application

With the vehicle stationary:
► Briefly pull the control.
The control indicator lamp flashes to confirm the application request.

Automatic operation

Automatic release

First ensure that the engine is running and that the driver's door is closed.
The electric parking brake gradually releases automatically as the vehicle moves off.
With a manual gearbox
► Fully depress the clutch pedal and engage first gear or reverse.
► Depress the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.
With an automatic gearbox
► Depress the brake pedal.
► Select position **D**, **M** or **R**.
► Release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal.
With a drive selector
► Depress the brake pedal.
► Select mode **D**, **B** or **R**.
► Release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal.

i With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, if the brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are properly closed.

! When stationary with the engine running, do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily. Risk of parking brake release.

Automatic application

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake is applied automatically when the engine is switched off.

! It is not applied automatically if the engine stalls or enters STOP mode with Stop & Start.

i In automatic mode, the parking brake can be manually applied or released at any time using the control.

Special cases

Immobilising the vehicle with the engine running

To immobilise the vehicle with the engine running, briefly pull the control.

Parking the vehicle with the brake released

! In very cold conditions (ice), applying the parking brake is not recommended.
To immobilise the vehicle, engage a gear or place the chocks against one of the wheels.

i With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, mode **P** is automatically selected when the ignition is switched off. The wheels are blocked.
For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

i With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector, if you open the driver's door while mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound and mode **P** will be engaged. The audible signal stops when the driver's door is closed.

Deactivating automatic operation

In some situations, for example when it is extremely cold or when towing (e.g. caravan, breakdown), it may be necessary to deactivate automatic operation of the system.

► Start the engine.
► Use the control to apply the parking brake, if it is released.
► Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
► Keep the control pushed in the release direction for 10 to a maximum of 15 seconds.
► Release the control.
► Depress and hold the brake pedal.
► Pull the control in the application direction for 2 seconds.

This indicator lamp on the instrument panel comes on to confirm deactivation of the automatic functions.

► Release the control and the brake pedal.
From this point onwards, only the manual functions, using the control, allow the parking brake to be applied and released.
► Follow this procedure again to reactivate automatic operation (confirmed by the indicator lamp on the instrument panel going out).

Emergency braking

If depressing the brake pedal fails to provide effective braking or in exceptional circumstances (e.g. driver unwell, assisted driving), the vehicle can be braked by sustained pulling on the electric parking brake control. Braking continues for as long as the control is kept pulled, and ceases when the control is released.
The ABS and DSC systems stabilise the vehicle during emergency braking.
If emergency braking malfunctions, the message "**Parking brake fault**" will be displayed on the instrument panel.

If the ABS and DSC systems malfunction, indicated by lighting one or both warning lamps on the instrument panel, the vehicle's stability is no longer ensured.
► In this case, ensure the vehicle's stability by successive and repeated "pull-release" actions on the electric parking brake control until the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

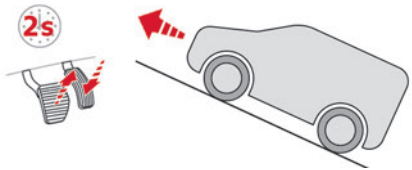
Hill start assist

This system keeps the vehicle briefly stationary (for approximately 2 seconds) when making a hill start, while you transfer your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.
The system is only active when:
– The vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal.
– Certain slope conditions are met.
– The driver's door is closed.

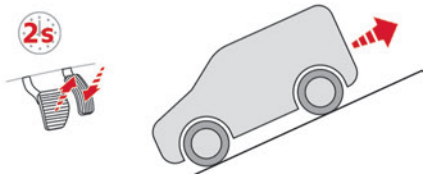
! Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist.
If someone needs to get out of the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually. Then check that the parking brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the electric parking brake control are on fixed.

! The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated. However, using the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle interrupts its operation.

Operation



Facing uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when the driver releases the brake pedal:
– If first gear or neutral is engaged on a manual gearbox.
– If mode **D** or **M** is selected on an automatic gearbox.
– If mode **D** or **B** is selected on the drive selector.



Facing downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when the driver releases the brake pedal.

Malfunction

If the event of a malfunction, these warning lamps light up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

5-speed manual gearbox

Engaging reverse gear

► With the clutch pedal fully depressed, you must place the gear lever in neutral.
► Move the gear lever to the right, then pull it back.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate engine starting:
– always select neutral,
– depress the clutch pedal.

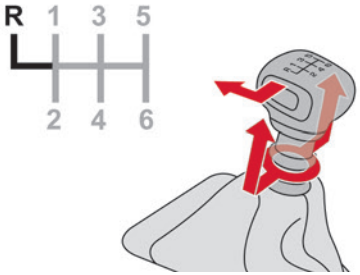
6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging 5th or 6th gear

► Move the gear selector fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

! Failure to follow this instruction could cause permanent damage to the gearbox (inadvertent engagement of 3rd or 4th gear).

Engaging reverse gear



► Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left, then forwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

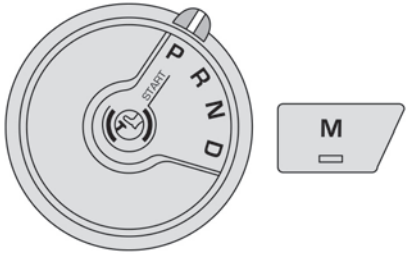
i As a safety precaution and to facilitate engine starting:
– always select neutral,
– depress the clutch pedal.

Automatic gearbox (Type 1)

8-speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of automatic operation or manual gear changing.
Two driving modes are available:
– **Automatic** operation for electronic management of the gears by the gearbox:
– **Manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.
In automatic mode, you can still change gear manually using the steering-mounted controls (e.g. when overtaking).

Gear selector

! To turn the gear selector in complete safety, it is recommended that you keep your foot on the brake pedal.



P. Park.
R. Reverse.
N. Neutral.
D. Drive (automatic operation).
M. Manual (manual operation with sequential changing of the gears).

i Position **N** can be used in traffic jams or in a car wash tunnel.

Steering mounted controls

► Pull the right-hand "**+**" or left-hand "**-**" control paddle towards you to change up or down.

The steering mounted controls do not allow neutral to be selected and reverse gear to be engaged or disengaged.

Information displayed on the instrument panel

When you move the selector or press button **M**, the corresponding gear and indicator lamp are shown on the instrument panel.
The "**-**" symbol is displayed if a value is invalid.
► If the message "**Foot on the brake**" is displayed on the instrument panel, press the brake pedal firmly.

Starting the vehicle

► With your foot on the brake, select position **P**.
► Start the engine.
If the conditions are not met, there is an audible signal, accompanied by a message on the instrument panel screen.
► Release the parking brake, unless it is set to automatic mode (with electric parking brake).
► Select position **R**, **N** or **D**.

If you are setting off from a steep slope with a loaded vehicle, **depress the brake pedal**, select position **D**, release the parking brake, unless it is set to automatic mode (with electric parking brake), then release the brake pedal.

► Gradually release the brake pedal.
Or
► Accelerate gradually in order to release the electric parking brake (if it is set to automatic mode).
The vehicle moves off immediately.

If **P** is displayed on the instrument panel but the selector is in another position, place the selector in position **P** to allow the engine to be started.
If position **N** is selected inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle, then select position **D** to accelerate.

When the engine is running at idle with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed.
Never leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised.
As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle without taking your key or remote control with you, even for a short time.
When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

With an automatic gearbox, never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Automatic operation

D ► Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the gears.
The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the driving style, the road profile and the load in the vehicle.
► For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, fully depress the accelerator pedal (kick-down).
The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.
When braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide effective engine braking.
If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not shift to a higher gear for safety reasons.

Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.
Never select positions **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

Temporary manual control of gear changes

You can temporarily assume control of gear changing using the "**+**" et "**-**" steering-mounted controls. The gear change request will be executed if the engine speed permits.

This function allows you to anticipate certain situations, such as overtaking another vehicle or approaching a bend in the road.
After a few seconds with no inputs via the control paddles, the gearbox reverts to automatic operation.

Creeping (moving without using the accelerator)

This function facilitates manoeuvring of the vehicle at low speed (when parking, in traffic jams, etc.).
When the engine is at idle, with the parking brake released and gear position **D**, **M** or **R** selected, the **vehicle begins to creep forward** as soon as you take your foot off the brake pedal (even without pressing the accelerator).

! As a safety precaution, never leave the vehicle with the engine running and the doors closed.

Manual operation

► With the selector in position **D**, press button **M** to enable 6-speed **sequential** gear changing.
The indicator lamp for the button comes on.
► Operate the "**+**" or "**-**" steering mounted controls.

M appears and the engaged gears are shown in succession on the instrument panel.

► You can revert to automatic operation at any time by pressing button **M** again.
The indicator lamp for the button goes off.

i In manual mode, there is no need to release the accelerator pedal while changing gear.

i It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit.

i If the engine speed is too low or too high, the selected gear flashes for a few seconds, then the gear actually engaged is shown.
When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox automatically selects gear **M1**.

i To preserve the brakes while descending a steep incline, use engine braking to reduce your speed (change down or select a lower gear).
Keeping the brake pedal pressed continuously for long periods can overheat the brakes, with the risk of damaging the braking system or making it inoperative.
Only use the brakes when necessary, to slow or stop the vehicle.

i Depending on the road configuration (e.g. mountainous road), manual operation may be preferable.
Automatic operation may not always be suitable, and does not enable engine braking.

Invalid value during manual operation

This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (gear selector between two positions).
► Place the selector "correctly" at a position.

Switching off the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, select position **P** then apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle, unless this is set to automatic mode (with electric parking brake).
Check that mode **P** has been engaged and that the electric parking brake has been applied automatically; if not, apply it manually.
The corresponding indicator lamps in the selector and the electric parking brake control lever must be on, as well as those on the instrument panel.

i A point of resistance may be noticed when moving to position **P**.
If the selector is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off,

an audible signal sounds and a message appears.
► Return the drive selector to position **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

! When positioned on a steep slope with a loaded vehicle, **depress the brake pedal**, select position **P**, apply the parking brake, unless it is set to automatic mode (with electric parking brake), then release the brake pedal.

! In all circumstances, ensure that the selector is in position **P** before leaving your vehicle.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp comes on and a message is displayed, when the ignition is switched on.
In this case, the gearbox goes into back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a significant jolt (without risk to the gearbox) when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**.
Do not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.
Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

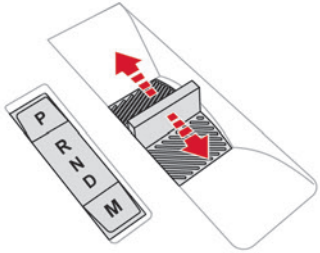
! There is a risk of damaging the gearbox:
– If the accelerator and brake pedals are depressed simultaneously.
– In the event of a battery failure, forcing the selector from position **P** to another position.

! **Automatic gearbox**
Never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Automatic gearbox (Type 2)

Automatic 8-speed gearbox with push selector. It also offers a manual mode with gear changes via control paddles located behind the steering wheel.

Push selector



P. Auto Park
Press this button to switch to Parking mode.
For parking the vehicle: the front wheels are blocked.

R. Reverse

N. Neutral
To free-wheel and move the vehicle, with the ignition off.
For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

D. Driving in automatic mode
The gearbox manages gear changes according to the style of driving, the road profile and the vehicle load.

M. Driving in manual mode (Petrol/Diesel)
Press this button to switch to manual mode.
The driver changes gear using the steering-mounted controls.

► In mode **N**, with your foot on the brake pedal, push without passing the point of resistance:
- Forwards, mode **R** is selected.
- Backwards, mode **D** is selected.

Release the selector fully after each push; it will then return to its initial position.

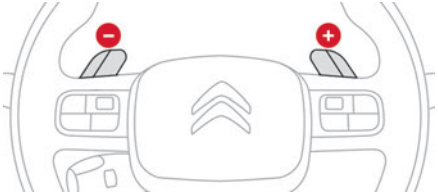
Special cases

To avoid mode **N** (quick change from **D** to **R** and back again):
► In mode **R**, push backwards past the point of resistance, mode **D** is selected.
► In mode **D**, push forwards past the point of resistance, mode **R** is selected.

► To return to mode **N**, push without passing the point of resistance.

Steering-mounted controls

(Depending on equipment)
In mode **M** or **D**, the steering-mounted control paddles can be used to change gear manually. They cannot be used to select neutral or to engage or disengage reverse gear.



► Pull the "**+**" or "**-**" paddle towards you and release to shift up or down a gear, respectively.

Information displayed on the instrument panel

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox status is displayed on the instrument panel:

P	Parking
R	Reverse
N	Neutral
D1...8	Automatic forward gear
M1...8	Manual forward gear

The state of the gearbox remains displayed on the instrument panel for a few seconds after switching off the ignition.

Operation

Only appropriate mode change instructions are validated.
With the engine running, if it is necessary to depress the brake pedal to change modes, an alert message will be displayed on the instrument panel.

! With the engine running and the brakes released, if **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves off, even without pressing the accelerator pedal.
Never depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time - risk of damage to the gearbox!

i If you open the driver's door while mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound and mode **P** will be engaged. The audible signal stops when the driver's door is closed.

! At speeds below 3 mph (5 km/h), opening the driver's door will engage mode **P** - risk of sudden braking!

! In the event of battery failure, it is essential to place the chock(s) supplied with the tool kit against one of the wheels to immobilise the vehicle.

Special aspects of automatic mode

The gearbox selects the gear that provides optimal performance based on ambient temperature, road profile, vehicle loading and driving style.
For maximum acceleration, press the accelerator fully down (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the selected gear until the maximum engine speed is reached.
Steering mounted controls allow the driver to temporarily select a gear, if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions permit.

Special aspects of manual mode

The gearbox only changes from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions permit.

Starting the vehicle

► Fully depress the brake pedal.
► Start the engine.
► With your foot on the brake pedal, push once or twice backwards to select automatic mode **D**, or forwards to shift into reverse gear **R**.
► Release the brake pedal.
► Accelerate gradually to automatically release the electric parking brake.
The vehicle moves off immediately.

! **Automatic gearbox**
Never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Switching the vehicle off

Regardless of the current gearbox mode, mode **P** is immediately engaged automatically when the ignition is switched off.
However, in mode **N**, mode **P** will be engaged after a delay of 5 seconds (time to enable free-wheeling mode).
Check that mode **P** has been engaged and that the electric parking brake was applied automatically; if not, apply it manually.
The corresponding indicator lamps on the gear selector and the electric parking brake control must be on, as well as the indicator lamps on the instrument panel.

Gearbox malfunction

This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.
Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Do not drive faster than 62 mph (100 km/h), keeping to the speed limit.

Switching of the gearbox to back-up mode

Mode **D** locks in third gear.
The paddles on the steering wheel do not work and mode **M** is no longer accessible.
You may feel a significant jolt on engaging reverse gear. This will not damage the gearbox.

Selector malfunction

Minor malfunction

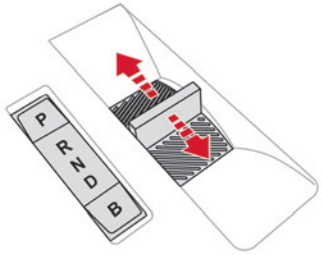
This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
Drive carefully.
Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
In some cases, the selector indicator lamps may no longer come on, but the gearbox state is still displayed on the instrument panel.

Major malfunction

This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of a message.

You must stop the vehicle.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Drive selector (Electric)



The drive selector is a pulse selector with a regenerative braking function.
The drive selector provides traction control based on the driving style, the road profile and the vehicle load.
With regenerative braking activated, it also manages engine braking when the accelerator pedal is released.

P. Park
Button for parking the vehicle: the front wheels are locked (the button lights up to indicate that it is activated).

R. Reverse
To engage reverse gear, with your foot on the brake pedal.

N. Neutral
To move the vehicle with the ignition off and so allow it to free-wheel.
For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.
D. Drive (automatic forward gear)
B. Brake (regenerative braking)
Regenerative braking (the button lights up to indicate its activation).

Information displayed on the instrument panel

When the ignition is switched on, the drive selector status is displayed on the instrument panel:
P : Park.
R : Reverse.
N : Neutral.
D : Drive (automatic forward gear).
B : Brake (regenerative braking activated).

Operation

► Move the selector by pressing it forwards (**N** or **R**) or rearwards (**N** or **D**) once or twice, passing the point of resistance if necessary.
For example, to change from **P** to **R** (with your foot on the brake pedal), either push forwards twice without passing the point of resistance or push just once, passing the point of resistance.

Regenerative braking

With the Brake function and when decelerating

The Brake function emulates engine braking, slowing the vehicle with no need to depress the brake pedal. The vehicle slows more quickly when the driver releases the accelerator pedal. The energy recovered when the accelerator pedal is released is then used to partially recharge the traction battery, thereby increasing the vehicle's driving range.

! The resulting deceleration of the vehicle does not cause the brake lamps to come on.

► From mode **D/R**, press button **B** to activate/deactivate the function (the button lights up when the function is activated).
D/R on the instrument panel is replaced with **B**.
The system status is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

! In some situations (e.g. battery full, extreme temperatures), the amount of regenerative braking may be temporarily limited, resulting in less deceleration.
The driver must remain alert to traffic conditions and must always be ready to use the brake pedal.

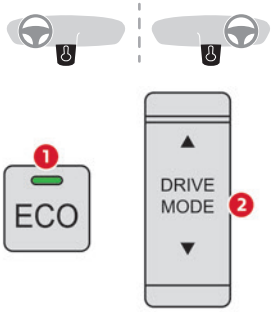
With the brake pedal

When the brake pedal is depressed, the intelligent braking system automatically recovers some of the energy and uses it to recharge the traction battery.
This energy recovery also reduces use of the brake pads, thereby limiting their wear.

i The driver may experience a different sensation when depressing the brake pedal compared to a vehicle without regenerative braking.

Driving modes

Driving modes are selected using the following control:



1.Pressing the control activates **Eco** mode. The indicator lamp comes on. (Petrol or Diesel)

2.Pressing the control displays the modes on the instrument panel.
With an electric motor, when starting the vehicle, no mode can be selected until the **READY** indicator lamp is displayed.
When the message disappears, the selected mode is activated and remains indicated on the instrument panel (except **Normal mode).**
Whenever the ignition is switched on, **Normal** driving mode is selected by default.

Normal

To restore the default settings.

Eco

To reduce energy consumption by reducing the performance of the heating and air conditioning, without deactivating them.
To reduce consumption of the traction battery's electrical energy by limiting engine torque.

Power (Electric)

Allows a fully laden vehicle (GVW) to obtain equivalent performance to that of an unladen vehicle in Normal mode.

All modes are displayed on the instrument panel, except for **Normal** mode.

Coasting mode
Depending on version or engine, with an EAT8 gearbox and the gear selector in mode **D**, gradually releasing the accelerator pedal fully allows free-wheeling which can save fuel. A drop in engine speed is normal (rev counter at idle, drop in engine noise).

Gear shift indicator

(Depending on engine)
This system is designed to reduce fuel consumption by recommending the most suitable gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and the vehicle's equipment, the system may recommend skipping one or more gears.
Gear engagement recommendations are not to be considered mandatory. Indeed, the configuration of the road, the traffic density and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the system's advice.
The system cannot be deactivated.

With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual operation.

The information appears on the instrument panel, in the form of an "up" or "down" arrow and the recommended gear.

The system adapts the gear change instructions according to the driving conditions (e.g. slope, load) and driving style (e.g. power demand, acceleration, braking).
The system never suggests:
– engaging first gear;
– engaging reverse gear.

Stop & Start (Petrol or Diesel)

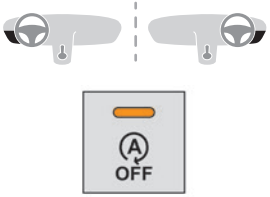
The Stop & Start function puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during phases when the vehicle is stationary (e.g. red lights, traffic jams). The engine automatically restarts - START mode - as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again.
Primarily designed for urban use, the function is intended to reduce fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.
The function does not affect the functionalities of the vehicle, in particular the braking.

Opening the bonnet
Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury caused by the engine restarting automatically.

Driving on flooded roads
Before entering into a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.
For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Deactivation/Activation

With button



► To deactivate or reactivate the system, press this button.
The indicator lamp is **on** when the system is **deactivated**.

With touch screen

The system is activated/deactivated via the **Vehicle/Driving** touch screen menu.

If the system has been deactivated in STOP mode, the engine restarts immediately.

The system is reactivated automatically whenever the engine is started by the driver.

Operation

Main conditions for operation

– The driver's door must be closed.
– The sliding side door must be closed.
– The driver's seat belt must be fastened.
– The level of charge in the battery must be sufficient.
– The temperature of the engine must be within its nominal operating range.
– The outside temperature must be between 0°C and 35°C.

Putting the engine into standby (STOP mode)

The engine automatically enters standby mode as soon as the driver indicates their intention to stop:
– With a **manual gearbox**: at a speed below 2 mph (3 km/h) or with the vehicle stationary (depending on engine), with the gear lever in neutral and the clutch pedal released.
– With an **automatic gearbox**: at a speed below 2 mph (3 km/h) or with the vehicle stationary (depending on engine), with the brake pedal depressed or the gear selector in position **N**.

Time counter

A time counter adds up the time spent in standby during the journey. It is reset to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Special cases:

The engine will not go into standby if the conditions for operation are not met and in the following cases:
– Steep slope (ascending or descending).
– Vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start (with the key or the **START/STOP** button).
– Electric parking brake applied or being applied.
– Needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
– Demisting active.

In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

After the engine has restarted, STOP mode is not available until the vehicle has reached a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h).

During parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear or turning the steering wheel.

Restarting the engine (START mode)

The engine automatically restarts as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again:
With a manual gearbox: with the clutch pedal fully depressed.
With an automatic gearbox:
– With the selector in position **D** or **M**: with the brake pedal released.
– With the selector in position **N** and the brake pedal released: with the selector at **D** or **M**.
– With the selector in position **P** and the brake pedal depressed: with the selector at **R**, **N**, **D** or **M**.
– Reverse gear engaged.

Special cases

The engine will restart automatically if the conditions for operation are met again and in the following case:
– Vehicle speed exceeds 2 mph (3 km/h) (depending on engine).
In this case, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

Malfunctions

Depending on the vehicle's equipment:
In the event of a system malfunction, this warning lamp flashes on the instrument panel.
The warning lamp in this button flashes and a message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The vehicle stalls in STOP mode

All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on if there is a fault.
Depending on version, a warning message may also be displayed, prompting you to place the gear selector in position **N** and depress the brake pedal.
► Switch off the ignition then start the engine again with the key or the "**START/STOP**" button.

12 V battery
The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification.
All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop

Tyre under-inflation detection

This system alerts the driver if one or more tyres suffer a drop in pressure.
The alert is raised when the vehicle is moving, not when stationary.
It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tyre pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed**.
It takes into account the last values stored during the reinitialisation request. It is therefore essential that the tyre pressure is correct during the operation. This operation is the driver's responsibility.

The tyre under-inflation detection cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system does not avoid the need to regularly check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel), especially before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tyres, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy load, high speed, long journey):
– worsens road-holding.
– lengthens braking distances.
– causes premature wear of the tyres.
– increases energy consumption.

The inflation pressures defined for the vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.
For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Checking tyre pressures
This check should be done monthly when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).
Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

Snow chains
The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Spare wheel
The steel spare wheel does not have an under-inflation detection sensor.

Under-inflation alert

This is signalled by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.
► Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and avoid sudden braking.
► Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

The loss of pressure detected may not always cause visible deformation of the tyre.
Do not rely on just a visual check.

► Using a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of all four tyres when cold.
► If it is not possible to carry out this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.
► In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).

Driving too slowly may not ensure optimum monitoring.
The alert is not immediately triggered in the event of a sudden loss of pressure or tyre blow-out. This is because analysis of the values read by the wheel's speed sensors can take several minutes.
The alert may be delayed at speeds below 25 mph (40 km/h), or when adopting a sporty driving mode.

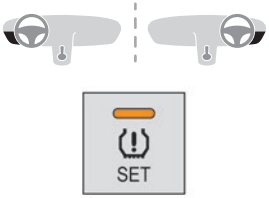
The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialisation

► The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment to the pressure of one or more tyres, and after changing one or more wheels.

Before reinitialising the system, make sure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the values written on the tyre pressure label.
Check the pressures of the four tyres before performing the reinitialisation.
The system does not advise if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

Without touch screen



► With the vehicle stationary, press this button for about 3 seconds then release it.
Reinitialisation is confirmed by an audible signal.

With touch screen

With the vehicle stationary, the system is reinitialised via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, these warning lamps light up on the instrument panel.
In this case, the tyre under-inflation monitoring function is no longer performed.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

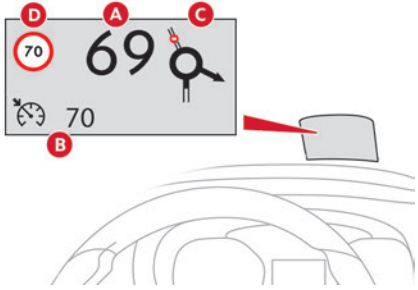
Non-standard spare wheel
The use of this type of spare wheel may suspend tyre pressure monitoring.
In this case, the malfunction warning lamp comes on and disappears once the wheel has been replaced by one of uniform size (the

same as the others), the pressure readjusted and the reinitialisation carried out.

Head-up display

System which projects various information onto a smoked blade placed in the driver's field of vision to avoid the driver having to take their eyes off the road.

Information displayed during operation

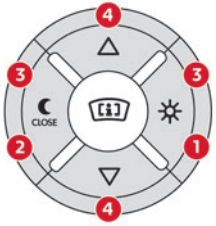


Once the system has been activated, the following information is grouped together in the head-up display:

A. The speed of your vehicle.
B. Cruise control/speed limiter information.
C. If your vehicle is suitably equipped, distances between vehicles, automatic emergency braking alerts and navigation instructions.
D. If your vehicle is suitably equipped, speed limit information.

For more information on **Navigation**, refer to the section **Audio equipment and telematics**.

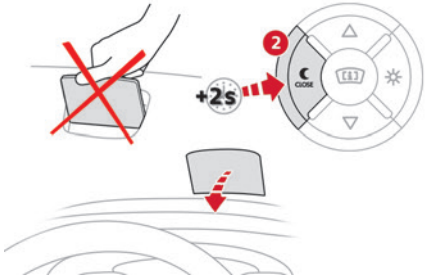
Selector



1. Switching on
2. Switching off (long press)
3. Brightness adjustment
4. Display height adjustment

Activation/Deactivation

► With the engine running, press button **1** to activate the system and deploy the projection blade.



► Press and hold button **2** to deactivate the system and retract the projection blade.
The state of the system is saved when the engine is switched off and restored on restarting.

Adjusting the height

► With the engine running, adjust the display to the desired height using the buttons **4**:

- up to move the display up,
- down to move the display down.

Brightness adjustment

► With the engine running, adjust the brightness of the information display using the buttons **3**:

- on the "sun" to increase the brightness,
- on the "moon" to decrease the brightness.

When stationary or while driving, no objects should be placed around the projection blade (or in its recess) so as not to impede its movement and correct operation.

In certain extreme weather conditions (rain and/or snow, bright sunshine, etc.), the head-up display may not be legible or may suffer temporary interference.
Some sunglasses may hamper reading of the information.
To clean the projection blade, use a clean, soft cloth (such as a spectacles cloth or microfibre cloth). Do not use a dry or abrasive cloth, or detergent or solvent products, due to the risk of scratching the projection blade or damaging the non-reflective coating.

This system operates when the engine is running, and the settings are saved when the ignition is switched off.

Driving and manoeuvring aids - General recommendations

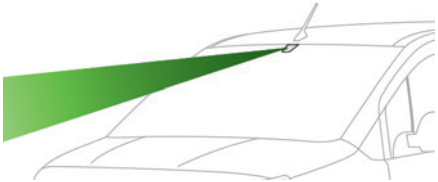
Driving and manoeuvring aids cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver must comply with the Highway Code, must remain in control of the vehicle in all circumstances and must be able to retake control of it at all times. The driver must adapt the speed to climatic conditions, traffic and the state of the road.

It is the driver's responsibility to constantly monitor traffic conditions, assess the distance and relative speed of other vehicles, and anticipate their manoeuvres before using the direction indicator and changing lanes.
These systems do not make it possible to exceed the laws of physics.

Driving aids
You should hold the steering wheel with both hands, always use the door and interior mirrors, always leave your feet close to the pedals and take a break every 2 hours.

Manoeuvring aids
The driver must always check the surroundings of the vehicle before and during the whole manoeuvre, in particular using the mirrors.

Radar(s)
The operation of the radar(s), along with any associated functions, may be affected by the accumulation of dirt (e.g. mud, ice), in poor weather conditions (e.g. heavy rain, snow), or if the bumpers are damaged.
If the front bumper is to be repainted, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar(s).



Driving aids camera
This camera and its associated functions may be impaired or not work if the windscreen area in front of the camera is dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.
Poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall), dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light) can also impair detection performance.
In the event of a windscreen replacement, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to recalibrate the camera; otherwise, the operation of the associated driving aids may be disrupted.

Other cameras
The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen or on the instrument panel may be distorted by the terrain.

In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.
Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.

Sensors
The operation of the sensors, as well as any associated functions, may be disrupted by noise pollution such as that emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills), by the accumulation of snow or dead leaves on the road or in the event of damaged bumpers and mirrors.
When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.
A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted.
The sensors do not systematically detect obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences).
Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

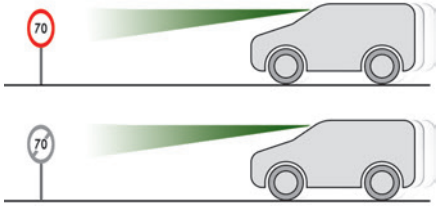
Maintenance
Clean the bumpers and door mirrors and the field of vision of the cameras regularly.
When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the sensors and cameras.

Mats/Pedal trims
The use of mats or pedal trims not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter or cruise control.
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
– Ensure that the mat is secured correctly.
– Never fit one mat on top of another.

Units of speed
Ensure that the units of speed displayed on the instrument panel (mph or km/h) are those for the country you are driving in.
If this is not the case, when the vehicle is stationary, set the display to the required units of speed so that it complies with what is authorised locally.
In case of doubt, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Road signs recognition

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



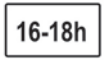
This system displays the maximum speed authorised locally on the instrument panel, using:
– Speed limit signs detected by the camera.
– Speed limit information from the navigation system's mapping.
– Signs indicating a shared traffic zone detected by the camera.

Sign detected	Suggested speed (calculated)
Entry into a shared traffic zone Example: 	**Without CITROËN Connect Nav** 10 mph or 20 km/h (depending on the units on the instrument panel) **With CITROËN Connect Nav** Display of the speed in force in the country you are driving in.

– Some supplementary traffic signs detected by the camera.

Supplementary traffic sign detected	Display of the speed associated with the supplementary traffic sign
Speed limit when raining Examples: 	If the wiper control stalk is in the "intermittent wipe" or "automatic wipe" position (in order to activate the rain sensor): 68 mph (110 km/h) (for example)

Supplementary traffic sign detected	Display of the speed associated with the supplementary traffic sign
Speed limit when towing 	If an approved towing device is fixed to the vehicle: 56 mph (90 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit applicable over a certain distance Example: 	43 mph (70 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit for vehicles with a gross vehicle weight or gross train weight less than 3.5 tonnes 	56 mph (90 km/h) (for example)

Supplementary traffic sign detected	Display of the speed associated with the supplementary traffic sign
Speed limit in case of snow Example: 	If the outside temperature is below 3°C: 19 mph (30 km/h) (for example) with a "snowflake" symbol
Speed limit at certain times of the day Example:  	19 mph (30 km/h) (for example) with a "clock" symbol

! Navigation mapping should be regularly updated in order to receive accurate speed limit information from the system.

! The units for the speed limit (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in.
This should be taken into account to ensure you observe the speed limit.
For the system to work properly when changing countries, the speed unit of the

instrument panel must match that of the country you are driving in.

! Automatic sign reading is a driving aid system and does not always display the correct speed limits.
The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over those displayed by the system.
The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

i Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed.
The display of the speed limit on the instrument panel is updated when passing a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

Activation/Deactivation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.

The settings are changed via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Information displayed on the instrument panel

1. Detected speed limit indication
   or
2. End of speed limit indication

The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.

On detecting speed limit information, the system displays the value.

For a suggested maximum speed, the first time that the vehicle exceeds it **by more than 3 mph (5 km/h)** (e.g. 59 mph (95 km/h)), the speed is displayed and flashes for 10 seconds (depending on version).

Operating limits

The system does not take account of reduced speed limits, especially those imposed in the following cases:
– Atmospheric pollution.
– Towing.
– Driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted.
– Tyre repaired using the temporary puncture repair kit.
– Young drivers.
The system may not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period and in the following situations:
– Road signs that are obstructed, non-standard, damaged or bent.
– Obsolete or incorrect maps.

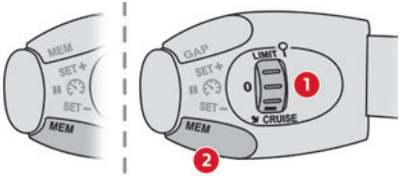
Recommendation

In addition to **Road signs recognition**, the driver can select the speed displayed as a speed setting for the speed limiter or cruise control using the speed limiter or cruise control 'store' button.

i For more information on the **Speed limiter**, **Cruise control** or **Adaptive**

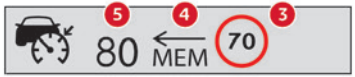
cruise control, refer to the corresponding sections.

Steering-mounted controls



1. Speed limiter/cruise control mode selection
2. Memorise the speed setting

Information displayed on the instrument panel



3. Speed limit indication
4. Speed memorisation prompt
5. Current speed setting

Storing the speed setting

► Switch on the speed limiter/cruise control.

The speed limiter/cruise control information is displayed.
Upon detecting a sign suggesting a new speed setting, the system displays the value and "**MEM**" flashes for a few seconds, prompting you to save it as a new speed setting.

> **i** If there is a difference of less than 6 mph (9 km/h) between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the Road signs recognition, the "**MEM**" symbol is not displayed.

Depending on the road conditions, several speeds may be displayed.
► Press button **2 once** to save the suggested speed value.
A message is displayed, confirming the request.
► Press button **2 again** to confirm and save the new speed setting.
The display then reverts to its previous state.

Extended Traffic Sign Recognition

> **!** For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This additional system recognises these road signs and displays them on the instrument panel if the appropriate display mode is selected:
– **No entry:** when entering a lane in the wrong direction, an alert message, including the symbol of this sign, is displayed on the instrument panel (request to check the direction of traffic).
– **Other signs:** as you approach it, the symbol of the corresponding sign is displayed on the instrument panel.

> **!** The actual road signs always take priority over those displayed by the system.
> The signs must comply with the Vienna Convention on road signs.

Activation/Deactivation

The settings are changed via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

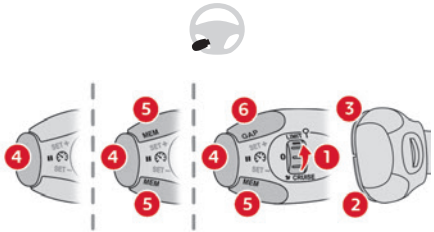
Speed limiter

> **!** For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver (speed setting).
The speed limiter is switched on manually.
The minimum speed setting is 19 mph (30 km/h).

The speed setting remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

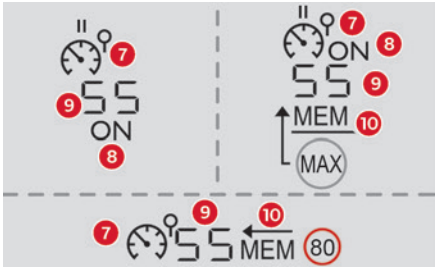
Steering-mounted control



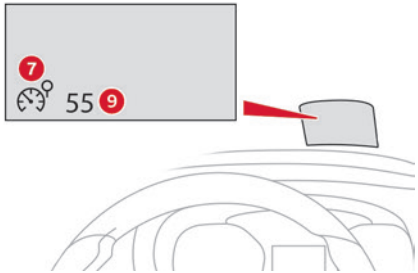
1. ON (**LIMIT** position)/OFF (position **0**)
2. Reduce the speed setting
3. Increase the speed setting
4. Pause/resume speed limiter with the speed setting previously stored
5. Depending on version:
   Display the speed thresholds saved using the Memorising speeds function
   or
   Use the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition (**MEM** display)
6. Display and adjustment of the programmed inter-vehicle distance

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or the **Road signs recognition**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



Head-up display



7. Speed limiter mode selection indication
8. Speed limiter on/pause status indication
9. Programmed speed setting value
10. Speed limiter recommendation with Road signs recognition (depending on version)

Switching on/Pausing

► Turn thumbwheel **1** to the "**LIMIT**" position to select speed limiter mode; the function is paused.

► If the speed limit setting is suitable (most recent speed setting programmed in the system), press button **4-II** to switch the speed limiter on.

► Pressing **4-II** again temporarily pauses the function (pause).

> ℹ When the speed setting remains below the vehicle's speed for a prolonged period of time, an audible warning is emitted.

Adjusting the limit speed setting

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

To modify the limit speed setting based on the vehicle's current speed:

► Briefly press button **2** or **3** to change the value in steps of + or - 1 mph (1.6 km/h).

► Press and hold button **2** or **3** to change the value in steps of + or - 5 mph (8 km/h).

To change the limit speed setting using memorised speeds, via the touch screen:

► Press button **5** to display the memorised speed settings.
► Press the touch screen button for the desired speed setting.
The selection screen closes after a few moments.
This setting becomes the new limit speed.
To modify the cruise speed setting based on the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition, as shown on the instrument panel:
► Press button **5** once; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request.
► Press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.
The speed is immediately shown on the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

► Fully depress the accelerator pedal.
The speed limiter is temporarily deactivated and the displayed speed setting flashes.
► Release the accelerator pedal to return to below the speed setting.
When exceeding the speed is not due to the driver's action (e.g. in case of a steep slope), an audible signal is triggered immediately.

! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the speed setting.
If necessary, apply the brakes to control your vehicle's speed.

When the vehicle speed returns to the speed setting level, the speed limiter operates again: the speed setting display becomes fixed again.

Switching off

► Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**0**" position: the display of information on the speed limiter disappears.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed flashing and then fixed instead of the speed setting.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Fixed speed limiter

If fitted to your vehicle, its speed can be limited to a fixed setting.
A label located in the passenger compartment indicates this maximum speed.
The fixed speed limiter is not a cruise control type function. It cannot be activated or deactivated by the driver during the trip.

i The maximum speed is originally set according to the regulations in force in the country of sale.
This maximum speed cannot be changed by the driver.
If you wish to modify this maximum speed, contact a CITROËN dealer.

Cruise control - Specific recommendations

! The cruise control function does not guarantee compliance with the maximum authorised speed and the safety distance between vehicles, the driver remains responsible for their driving.
In the interest of public safety, only use cruise control if the traffic conditions enable vehicles to drive at a steady speed and maintain an adequate safety distance.
Remain vigilant while cruise control is activated. If you press and hold one of the speed setting modification buttons, your vehicle may change speed very abruptly.
When **descending a steep hill**, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the set speed. Brake if necessary to control the vehicle speed.
On **steep climbs** or when towing, the set speed may not be reached or maintained.

i **Exceeding the programmed speed setting**
You can **temporarily** exceed the speed setting by pressing the accelerator pedal (the programmed speed flashes).
To return to the speed setting, release the accelerator pedal (when the set speed is reached again, the displayed speed stops flashing).

! **Operating limits**
Never use the system in the following situations:
– In an urban area with the risk of pedestrians crossing the road.
– In heavy traffic (except versions with the Stop & Go function).
– On winding or steep roads.
– On slippery or flooded roads.
– In poor weather conditions.
– In the event of restricted visibility for the driver.
– Driving on a speed circuit.
– Driving on a rolling road.
– When using a ‘space-saver’ type spare wheel.
– When using snow chains, non-slip covers or studded tyres.

Programmable cruise control

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and the **Cruise control - particular recommendations**.

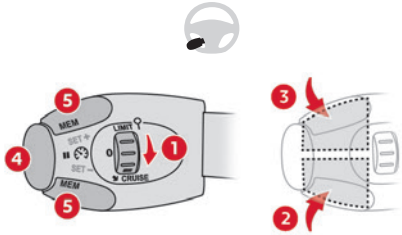
This system automatically maintains the vehicle’s speed at the value programmed by the driver (speed setting), without the use of the accelerator pedal.

Cruise control is switched on manually.
It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h).
With a manual gearbox, third gear or higher must be engaged.
With an automatic gearbox, mode **D** or second gear or higher in mode **M** must be engaged.
With a drive selector, mode **D** or **B** must be engaged.

i Cruise control remains active after changing gear, regardless of the gearbox type, on engines fitted with the Stop & Start function.

i Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting.

Steering-mounted control

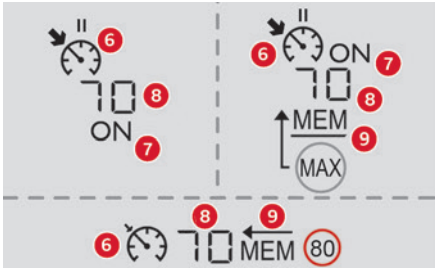


1. ON (**CRUISE** position)/OFF (position **0**)
2. Activate cruise control at the current speed/ decrease speed setting

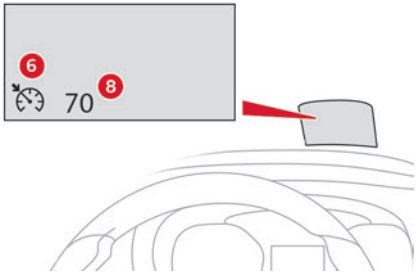
3. Activate cruise control at the current speed/ increase speed setting
4. Pause/resume cruise control with the speed setting previously saved
5. Depending on version:
   Display the speed thresholds saved using the Memorising speeds function
   or
   Use the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition (**MEM** display)

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or the **Road signs recognition**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



Head-up display



6. Cruise control mode selection indication
7. Cruise control pause/resume status indication
8. Programmed speed setting value
9. Cruise control recommendation with Road signs recognition (depending on version)

Switching on/pausing

► Turn thumbwheel **1** to the "**CRUISE**" position to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.
► Press button **2-SET-** or **3-SET+** to activate cruise control and save a speed setting when the vehicle has reached the desired speed; the vehicle's current speed is saved as the speed setting.
► Release the accelerator pedal.
► Pressing button **4-II** temporarily pauses the function (pause).
► Pressing button **4-II** again resumes operation of the cruise control (ON).

> ℹ Cruise control can also be paused temporarily:
> – by pressing the brake pedal.
> – automatically, if the electronic stability control (ESC) system is triggered.

Modifying the cruise speed setting

Cruise control must be active.
To modify the cruise speed setting, based on the current speed of the vehicle:
► Briefly press button **2** or **3** to change the value in steps of + or - 1 mph (km/h).
► Press and hold button **2** or **3** to change the value in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h).

> ! Pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of the vehicle.

> ! As a precaution, we recommend setting a cruise speed fairly close to the current speed of your vehicle, to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

To change the cruise speed setting using memorised speed settings and from the touch screen:
► Press button **5** to display the memorised speed settings.

► Press the touch screen button for the desired speed setting.
The selection screen closes after a few moments.
This setting becomes the new cruise speed.
To modify the cruise speed setting using the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition shown on the instrument panel:
► Press button **5** once; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request.
► Press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.
The speed is immediately shown on the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

If needed (when overtaking, for example) it is possible to exceed the programmed speed by pressing the accelerator pedal.
Cruise control is temporarily deactivated and the programmed speed displayed flashes.
To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.
Once the vehicle has returned to the programmed speed, cruise control takes over again and the programmed speed setting stops flashing.

! When descending a steep hill, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.
You may have to brake to control the speed of your vehicle. In this case, the cruise control is automatically paused.
To activate the system again, with the vehicle speed above 25 mph (40 km/h), press button **4**.

Switching off

► Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**0**" position: the cruise control information disappears from the screen.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed flashing and then fixed instead of the speed setting.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Adaptive cruise control

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and the **Cruise control - particular recommendations**.

This system automatically maintains the vehicle speed at a value set by the driver (speed setting), while respecting a safety distance from the vehicle in front (target vehicle) previously set by the driver. The system automatically manages the acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle.
With a manual gearbox, the system slows the vehicle down as far as a speed of 19 mph (30 km/h).
With the **Stop function**, the system manages braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

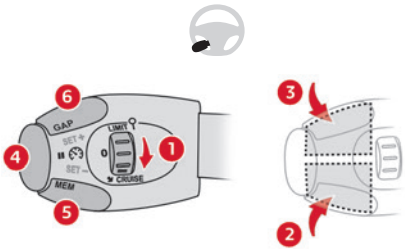
! The brake lamps come on if the vehicle is slowed down by the system.
It can be dangerous to drive if the brake lamps are not in perfect working order.

To do this, the system uses a camera fitted at the top of the windscreen and, depending on version, a radar fitted in the front bumper.

! Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works with moving vehicles driving in the same direction as your vehicle.

i If the driver activates the direction indicator to overtake a slower vehicle, cruise control may temporarily reduce the distance to the target vehicle to facilitate overtaking, without exceeding the speed setting.

Steering-mounted controls



1. ON (**CRUISE** position)/OFF (position **0**)
2. Activation of cruise control at the current speed/decrease speed setting
3. Activation of cruise control at the current speed/increase speed setting
4. Pause/resume cruise control with the speed setting previously saved
5. Depending on version:
   Display the speed thresholds saved using the Memorising speeds function
   or
   Use the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition (**MEM** display)
6. Display and adjustment of the distance setting to the vehicle in front

Use

Activating the system (pause)

► With the engine running, turn thumbwheel **1** downwards to the **CRUISE** position. Cruise control is ready to operate (grey display).

Switching on cruise control and setting the speed

With a manual gearbox, your speed must be between 19 and 99 mph (30 and 160 km/h).
With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector, mode **D** or **M** must be selected and your speed must be between 19 and 99 mph (30 and 160 km/h).

► Press **2-SET-** or **3-SET+**: the current speed becomes the speed setting (minimum 19 mph (30 km/h)) and cruise control is immediately activated (green display).

► Press **3-SET+** to increase or **2-SET-** to decrease the speed setting (steps of 5 mph (km/h) if held pressed).

! Pressing and holding either **2-SET-** or **3-SET+** results in a rapid change in the speed of the vehicle.

Pausing/resumption of cruise control

► Press **4-II** or depress the **brake pedal** (grey display).

Cruise control may also have been paused:
– automatically, if the electronic stability control (ESC) system is triggered.
– by engaging neutral.
– when the speed of the vehicle goes below 19 mph (30 km/h).
– when the speed of the engine goes below 1,100 rpm with a manual gearbox.
– by depressing the clutch pedal for more than 10 seconds.
– by using the electric parking brake.

► Press **4-II** to resume cruise control (green display).

With a manual gearbox, the driver should depress the accelerator pedal to move off, then, when above 19 mph (30 km/h), reactivate the system by pressing **2-SET-**, **3-SET+** or **4-II**.
With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector, following braking that has brought the vehicle to a complete stop, the system holds the vehicle stationary; cruise control is paused. The driver should depress the accelerator pedal to move off, then, when above 2 mph (3 km/h), reactivate the system by pressing **2-SET-**, **3-SET+** or **4-II**.
If the driver takes no action after the vehicle has been stopped, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after about 5 minutes.

i Cruise control remains active after changing gear, regardless of the gearbox type.

! When the driver attempts to reactivate cruise control after the function has been paused, the message "**Activation not possible, unsuitable conditions**" is displayed briefly if reactivation is not possible (safety conditions not met).

Changing the programmed speed setting with the Road signs recognition function

► Press **5-MEM** to accept the speed suggested by the system on the instrument panel, then press again to confirm.

! To prevent sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle, select a speed setting relatively close to the vehicle's current speed.

Changing the inter-vehicle distance

► Press **6** to display the distance setting thresholds ("Distant", "Normal", "Close"), then press again to select a threshold.
After a few seconds, the option is accepted and will be memorised when the ignition is switched off.

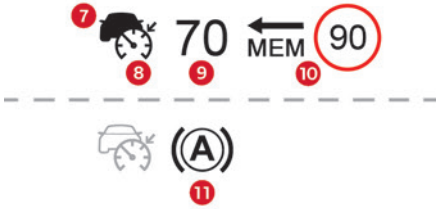
Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

► Press the accelerator pedal fully. Distance monitoring and cruise control are deactivated while acceleration is maintained. "Cruise control on hold" is displayed.

Deactivating the system

► Turn thumbwheel **1** upwards to the **OFF** position.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



7. Vehicle detected by the system (full symbol)
8. Cruise control active (colour not grey)
9. Speed setting value
10. Speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function
11. Vehicle held stationary (versions with automatic gearbox)

12. Inter-vehicle distance setting
13. Position of the vehicle detected by the system

Messages and alerts

i The actual order in which these messages or alerts are displayed may vary.

"**Cruise paused**" or "**Cruise control on hold**" following brief acceleration by the driver.

"**Active cruise control**", no vehicle detected.

"**Cruise paused**", vehicle detected.

"**Active cruise control**", vehicle detected.

(orange)
"**Take back control**".
► Brake or accelerate, depending on the context.

(red)
"**Take back control**".
► **Take back control of the vehicle immediately**: the system cannot manage the current driving situation.

"**Activation refused, conditions unsuitable**".
The system refuses to activate cruise control, as the necessary conditions are not fulfilled.

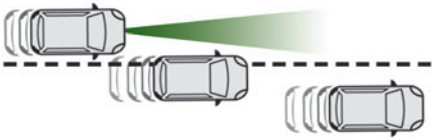
Stop function

"**Cruise paused**" (for a few seconds).

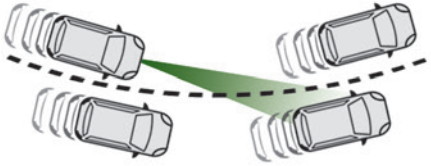
The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop and is keeping it immobilised: cruise control is paused.
The driver must accelerate to move off again, then reactivate cruise control.

Operating limits

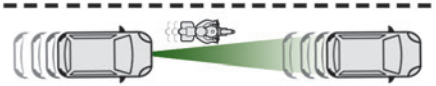
Cruise control operates by day and night, in dry weather or moderate rainfall.
Certain situations cannot be managed by the system and require driver intervention.
Cases not taken into account by the system:
– Pedestrians, cyclists, animals.
– Stationary vehicles (e.g. traffic jams, breakdown).



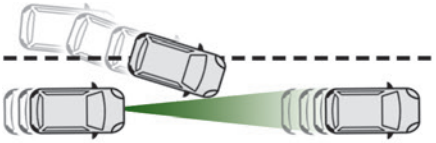
– Vehicles crossing your lane.
– Vehicles driving in the opposite direction.
Situations where the driver must suspend the system:



– Vehicles in a tight bend.
– When approaching a roundabout.



– When following a narrow vehicle.
Reactivate the system when conditions allow.
Situations in which the driver is prompted to immediately resume control:
– Excessively sharp deceleration by the vehicle in front of you.



– When a vehicle cuts in sharply between your vehicle and the one in front.

! Some vehicles on the road may be poorly perceived or interpreted by the camera and/or the radar (e.g. truck), which can lead to an incorrect evaluation of distances and result in inappropriate acceleration or braking of the vehicle.

! Pay particular attention:
– When motorcycles are present and when there are vehicles staggered across the traffic lane.
– When entering a tunnel or crossing a bridge.

! If any of the following malfunctions occurs, do not use the system:
– Following an impact on the windscreen close to the camera.
– Brake lamps not working.

! If the vehicle has undergone any of the following modifications, do not use the system:
– Carrying long objects on roof bars or a roof rack.
– Towing.
– Front end of the vehicle modified (for example by adding long-range headlamps or painting the front bumper).
– Obstructed radar.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed instead of the speed setting.

This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, to confirm the malfunction.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Memorising speeds

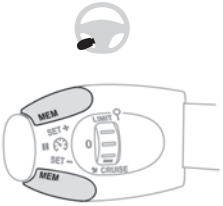
This function, used only for the speed limiter and programmable cruise control, lets you save speed settings that will subsequently be proposed for the purpose of configuring these two systems.
You can memorise multiple speed settings for each of the two systems.
By default, some speed settings are already memorised.

! As a safety measure, the driver must only change speed settings when stationary.

Changing a speed setting

Speed settings can be activated, deactivated, selected and changed in the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

"MEM" button



With this button, you can select a memorised speed setting to use with the speed limiter or the programmable cruise control.
For more information on the **Speed limiter** or **Programmable cruise control**, refer to the corresponding section.

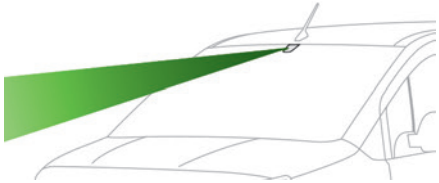
Active Safety Brake with Collision Risk Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system:
– warns the driver that their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front.
– reduces the vehicle's speed to avoid a collision or limit its severity.

i The system also takes motorcyclists and animals into account; however, animals below 0.5 m tall and objects on the road are not necessarily detected.

This system is comprised of three functions:
– Collision Risk Alert.
– Intelligent emergency braking assistance (iEBA).
– Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).



The vehicle has a camera located at the top of the windscreen.

! This system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety.
It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor traffic conditions in accordance with applicable driving regulations.

i As soon as the system detects a potential obstacle, it prepares the braking circuit in case automatic braking is needed. This may cause a slight noise and a slight sensation of deceleration.

Operating conditions and limits

Vehicle moving forward.
ESC system operational.
DSC system activated.
DSC/ASR systems activated.
Seat belts fastened for all passengers.
Stabilised speed on roads with few bends.
In the following cases, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is advised:
– Towing a trailer.
– Carrying long objects on roof bars or roof rack.
– Vehicle with snow chains fitted.
– Before using an automatic car wash, with the engine running.
– When changing a wheel, working near a wheel or inside the engine compartment.
– Before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop.
– Towed vehicle, engine running.
– Following an impact to the windscreen close to the detection camera.

The system is automatically deactivated when the use of certain types of "space-saver" spare wheel (smaller diameter) is detected, or if a fault with the brake pedal switch or at least two brake lamps is detected.

It can be dangerous to drive if the brake lamps are not in perfect working order.

The driver must not overload the vehicle (keep within the GVW limit and load height limits for roof bars).

It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified.
The driver must always stay in control of the vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

Following an impact, the system is automatically deactivated.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Collision Risk Alert

This function warns the driver that their vehicle is at risk of a collision with the vehicle in front or with a pedestrian present in their traffic lane.

Operation

Depending on the degree of risk of collision detected by the system and the alert trigger threshold chosen by the driver, several different levels of alert may be triggered and displayed on the instrument panel.
The system takes account of the vehicle dynamics, the speed of your vehicle and the one in front, the environmental conditions and the operation of the vehicle (actions on the pedals, steering wheel, etc.) to trigger the alert at the most relevant moment.

(orange)
Level 1: visual alert only, warning you that the vehicle in front is very close.
The message "**Vehicle close**" is displayed.
(red)
Level 2: visual and audible alert, warning you that a collision is imminent.
The message "**Brake!**" is displayed.
Level 3: in some cases, a vibration alert in the form of micro-braking can be given, confirming the risk of collision.

Where the speed of your vehicle is too high approaching another vehicle, the first level of alert may not be displayed: the level 2 alert may be displayed directly.
Important: the level 1 alert is not displayed when there is a stationary obstacle or when the "**Close**" trigger threshold has been selected.

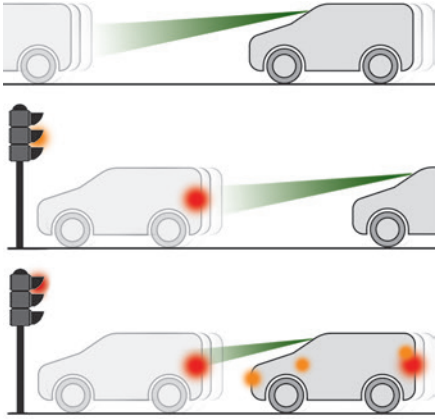
Modifying the alert trigger threshold

This trigger threshold determines the sensitivity with which the function warns of the risk of collision.
The threshold is set via the**Driving**/**Vehicle** touch screen menu.
► Select one of the three pre-defined thresholds: "Far", "Normal" or "Close".
The last threshold selected is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance (iEBA)

This function supplements braking in the event that the driver brakes, but not enough to avoid a collision.
This assistance will only be provided if the driver presses the brake pedal.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called automatic emergency braking, intervenes following the alerts if the driver does not react quickly enough and does not operate the vehicle's brakes.
The system aims to reduce the speed of impact or avoid a collision where the driver fails to react.

> The speed will be reduced by a maximum of 16 mph (25 km/h) for versions with camera only, or by a maximum of 31 mph (50 km/h) for versions with camera and radar.

Operation

The system operates subject to the following conditions:
– At reduced speed in an urban environment, when a pedestrian is detected.
– At reduced speed in an urban environment, when a stationary vehicle is detected.
– The vehicle's speed is between 6 mph and 53 mph (10 km/h and 85 km/h) when a moving vehicle is detected.

This warning lamp flashes (for approximately 10 seconds) as soon as the function applies the vehicle's brakes.
With an automatic gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking bringing the vehicle to a complete stop, keep the brake pedal depressed to prevent the vehicle from moving off again.
With a manual gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking bringing the vehicle to a complete stop, the engine may stall.

> The driver can maintain control of the vehicle at any time by firmly turning the steering wheel and/or firmly depressing the accelerator pedal.

> The brake pedal may vibrate slightly while the function is operating.
If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

Deactivation/Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.

The settings are changed via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If these warning lamps come on after the engine has been switched off and then restarted, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

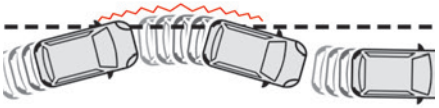
These warning lamps light up on the instrument panel to indicate that the driver's and/or front passenger's seat belt is not fastened (depending on version). The

automatic braking system is deactivated until the seat belts are fastened.

Active lane departure warning system

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

The system corrects the vehicle's trajectory by alerting the driver as soon as it detects a risk of involuntary lane departure or crossing of a verge or hard shoulder (depending on version).
To do this, the system uses a camera, placed on the upper part of the windscreen, identifying the lane markings on the ground and the side of the road (depending on version).
This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



Operating conditions

– Vehicle speed between 43 and 112 mph (70 and 180 km/h).
– Road marked with a central dividing line.
– Steering wheel held in both hands.
– Direction indicators not activated.
– ESC system activated and operational.

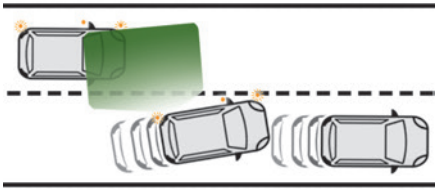
! The system helps the driver only if there is a risk of the vehicle unintentionally wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage the safe driving distance, vehicle speed or braking.
The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands in a way that allows control to be maintained in circumstances where the system is not able to intervene (for example, if the central dividing line disappears).

Operation

As soon as the system identifies a risk of involuntarily crossing one of the lane markings detected on the ground or a lane boundary (e.g. grass verge), it performs the trajectory correction necessary to restore the vehicle to its original lane.
The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.

This warning lamp flashes during trajectory correction.

i The driver can prevent the correction by firmly holding the steering wheel (e.g. during an emergency manoeuvre).
The correction is interrupted immediately if the direction indicators are operated.



While the direction indicators are activated and for a few seconds after switching them off, the system considers that a change of trajectory is intentional and no correction is triggered during this period.

! If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough during an automatic correction of trajectory, it interrupts the correction. An alert is triggered to encourage the driver to take back control of the vehicle.

Driving situations and related alerts

The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed in different driving situations.
The actual order of display of these alerts may be different.

Function status	Indicator lamp	Display and/or associated message (with matrix instrument panel and/or head-up display)	Comments
OFF		(grey)	Function deactivated.
ON		(grey)	System active, conditions not met: – Speed below 43 mph (70 km/h). – No lane marking recognised. – ASR/DSC systems deactivated or operation of ESC system triggered. – "Sporty" driving.
ON		(grey)	Automatic deactivation/standby of the function (e.g. detection of a trailer, use of the "space-saver" type spare wheel supplied with the vehicle).
ON		(green)	Lane marking detected. Speed above 43 mph (70 km/h).

Function status	Indicator lamp	Display and/or associated message (with matrix instrument panel and/or head-up display)	Comments
ON		(orange)/(green)	The system corrects the trajectory on the side where the risk of unintentional crossing is detected (orange line).
ON		(orange)/(green) **"Hold the wheel"**	– If, during the correction, the system detects that the driver has not held the steering wheel for a few seconds, it stops the correction and returns control to the driver. – During the trajectory correction, the system determines that the correction will not be enough: the driver is warned that they must provide additional trajectory correction. The duration of audible warnings will increase if multiple corrections are performed in quick succession. The warning will become continuous, persisting until the driver responds. This message may also be displayed with your hands on the steering wheel.

Operating limits

The system goes into standby automatically in the following cases:
– ESC deactivated or operation triggered.
– Speed below 43 mph (70 km/h) or greater than 112 mph (180 km/h).
– Electrical connection to a trailer.
– Use of a"space-saver" spare wheel detected (as detection is not immediate, deactivation of the system is recommended).
– Dynamic driving style detected, pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal.
– Driving over lane markings.
– Activation of the direction indicators.
– Crossing the inside line on a bend.
– Driving on a tight bend.
– Inactivity by the driver detected during correction.

During a correction, if the driver is inactive (not holding the steering wheel for 10 seconds), a warning message appears. If the driver remains inactive (not holding the steering wheel for 2 more seconds), correction is stopped.

! The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
– Insufficient contrast between the road surface and the verge or hard shoulder (e.g. shade).
– Lane markings worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, etc.),
– Close proximity to the vehicle in front (lane markings may not be detected).
– Roads that are narrow, winding.

Risk of undesirable operation

The system should be deactivated in the following situations:
– When changing a wheel or working near a wheel.
– Towing or with a bicycle carrier on a towing device, especially with trailer not plugged in or not approved.
– Road in poor condition, unstable or with very poor grip (risk of aquaplaning, snow, ice).
– Adverse weather conditions.
– Driving on racing circuits.
– Driving on a rolling road.

Deactivation/Activation

► Press this button to deactivate/reactivate the system at any time.

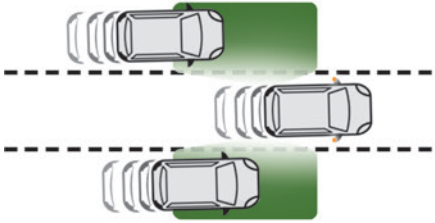
Deactivation is signalled by the lighting of the indicator lamp in the button and this warning lamp on the instrument panel.
The system is **automatically reactivated** every time the ignition is switched on.

Malfunction

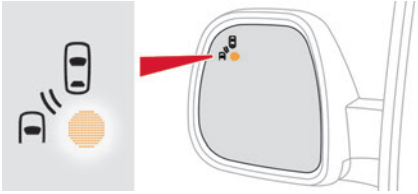
In the event of a malfunction, these warning lamps light up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Blind spot monitoring

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system warns the driver of a potential danger posed by the presence of another vehicle (car, lorry, motorcycle) in the vehicle's blind spots (areas hidden from the driver's field of vision) using sensors located on the sides of the bumpers.



A warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:
– **fixed**, immediately, when being overtaken;
– **flashing**, after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly, and when the direction indicator is used.

Activation/Deactivation

The settings are changed via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

When starting the vehicle, the warning lamp comes on in each mirror to indicate that the system is activated.

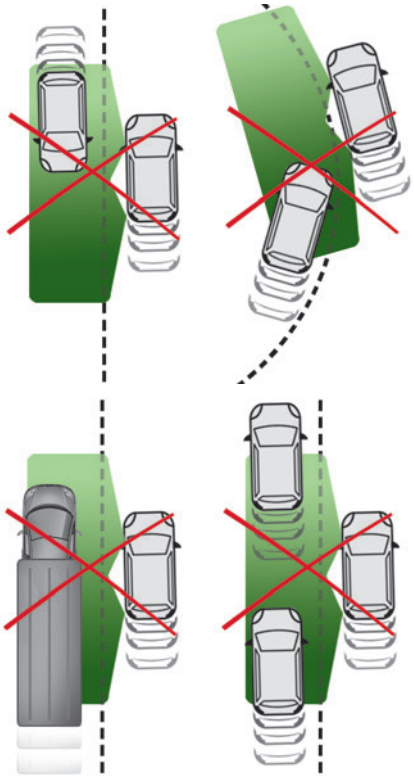
The status of the system is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

> The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towing device approved by CITROËN.

Operating conditions

– All vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes.
– The speed of your vehicle must be between 7 and 87 mph (12 and 140 km/h).
– When overtaking a vehicle, the speed difference is less than 6 mph (10 km/h).
– When overtaken by a vehicle, the speed difference is less than 16 mph (25 km/h).
– Traffic is flowing normally.
– Overtaking a vehicle over a certain period of time and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot.
– You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
– Your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan, etc.

Operating limits



No alert is triggered in the following conditions:

– presence of stationary objects (e.g. parked vehicles, safety rails, lampposts, signs).
– vehicles travelling in the opposite direction.
– on winding roads or in case of sharp turns.
– when overtaking or being overtaken by a very long vehicle (e.g. truck, bus), which is both detected in a blind spot from behind and present in the driver's field of vision from the front.
– quick overtaking manoeuvre.
– very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object.

Malfunction

If the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

> The system may be temporarily disturbed by certain weather conditions (e.g. rain, hail).
> In particular, driving on a wet road or going from a dry to a wet area can cause false alerts (e.g. presence of a cloud of water droplets in the blind spot interpreted as a vehicle).
> In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow.
> Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors, or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive

labels or other objects; they may hamper correct operation of the system.

Distraction detection

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

Depending on version, the function consists of either the "Coffee Break Alert" system alone or combined with the "Driver Attention Warning" system.

! These systems are in no way designed to keep the driver awake or to prevent the driver from falling asleep at the wheel.
It is the driver's responsibility to stop if feeling tired.
Take a break if you are feeling tired or at least every 2 hours.

Activation/Deactivation

The settings are changed via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.
The status of the function is saved when the ignition is switched off.

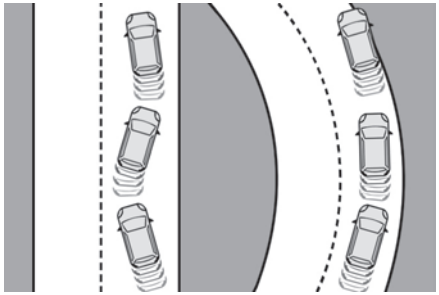
Coffee Break Alert

The system triggers an alert when it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 43 mph (70 km/h).
This alert is issued via the display of a message encouraging the driver to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal.
If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.
The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:
– With the engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes.
– The ignition has been switched off for a few minutes.
– The driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is opened.

i As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 43 mph (70 km/h), the system goes into standby.
Driving time starts being counted again once the speed reaches above 43 mph (70 km/h).

Driver Attention Warning

Depending on version, the Coffee Break Alert system may be combined with the Driver Attention Warning system.



The system assesses the driver's level of alertness, fatigue and distraction by identifying trajectory changes in relation to the lane markings.
To do this, the system uses a camera, placed on the upper part of the windscreen.
This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 43 mph (70 km/h)).
At a first alert level, the driver is warned by the message "**Be vigilant!**", accompanied by an audible signal.
After three first-level alerts, the system triggers a further alert with the message "**Dangerous driving: take a break**", accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

! The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
– poor visibility conditions (e.g. insufficient road lighting, snowfall, heavy rain, dense fog).
– dazzle (e.g. headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a wet road

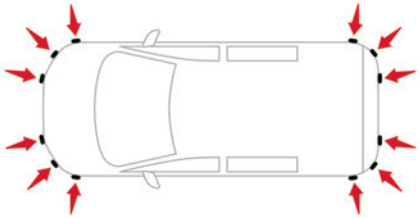
surface, leaving a tunnel, alternating light and shade).
– windscreen area located in front of the camera: dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker.
– lane markings absent, worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks).
– close to the vehicle in front (lane markings not detected).
– narrow or winding roads.

In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
– lane markings absent, worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks);
– close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected);
– roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

Parking sensors

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

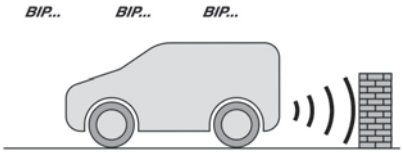


This system detects and signals the proximity of obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, barrier) using sensors located in the bumper.

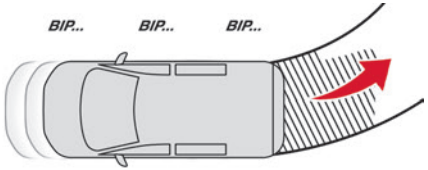
Rear parking sensors

► Engage reverse gear to start the system (confirmed by an audible signal).
The system is switched off when reverse gear is disengaged.

Audible assistance



The system signals the presence of obstacles which are both within the sensors' detection zone and in the vehicle path defined by the direction of the steering wheel.



Depending on version, in the example shown, only the obstacles present in the shaded area will be signalled by the audible assistance.
The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.
When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than about thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.
The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.

Adjusting the audible signal
Depending on version, with CITROËN Connect Radio or CITROËN Connect Nav, pressing this button opens the window for adjusting the volume of the audible signal.

Visual assistance

This supplements the audible signal, without taking account of the vehicle's trajectory, by displaying bars on the screen whose location represents the distance between the obstacle and the vehicle (white: more distant, orange: close, red: very close).
When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed on the screen.

Front parking sensors

Supplementing the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is below 6 mph (10 km/h).
Front parking sensor operation is suspended if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if an obstacle is no longer detected or the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

i The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) locates the obstacle relative to the vehicle, whether in front of or behind it on its path.

Side parking sensors

Using four additional sensors located on the sides of the bumpers, the system records the position of obstacles during the manoeuvre and indicates them when they are located alongside the vehicle.

! Only fixed obstacles are indicated correctly. Moving obstacles detected at the beginning of the manoeuvre may be indicated mistakenly, while moving obstacles that appear alongside the vehicle but were not previously recorded will not be indicated.

! Objects memorised during the manoeuvre will no longer be stored after switching off the ignition.

Deactivation/Activation

Without touch screen

► To deactivate or activate the system, press this button.
The indicator lamp is **on** when the system is **deactivated**.

With touch screen

The settings are changed via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.
The status of the function is saved when the ignition is switched off.

i The rear parking sensors system will be deactivated automatically if a trailer or

bicycle carrier is connected to a towing device installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
In this case, the outline of a trailer is displayed at the rear of the image of the vehicle.

The parking sensors are deactivated while the Park Assist function is measuring a space.
For more information on the **Park Assist** function, refer to the corresponding section.

Operating limits

If the boot is heavily loaded, the vehicle may tilt, affecting distance measurements.

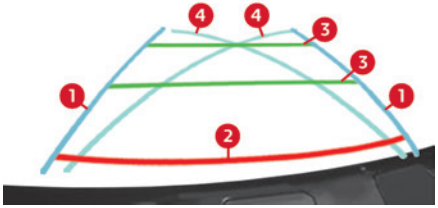
Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction when changing into reverse gear, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal (short beep).
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Reversing camera

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

With the ignition on, this system uses a camera located near the third brake lamp to display a view of the rear of your vehicle on the reproduction screen (if it is a panel van or has a solid partition).
The reversing camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged. The image is displayed on the reproduction screen. The reproduction screen switches off when the gearbox is in neutral or in a forward gear.



The blue lines **1** represent the general direction of the vehicle (the gap corresponds to the width of your vehicle with the mirrors).
The red line **2** represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.

The green lines **3** represent distances of about 1 and 2 metres beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.
The turquoise blue curves **4** represent the maximum turning circle.

! Some objects may not be seen by the camera.

! Certain vehicles may be difficult to see (dark colours, lamps off) when the brightness of the screen is reduced using the vehicle’s lighting dimmer.

! The image quality may be affected by the surroundings, the exterior conditions (rain, dirt, dust), the driving mode and the lighting conditions (night, low sun).
In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.

! Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.
During parking manoeuvres and lane changes, it is important to check the sides of the vehicle using the mirrors.
The rear parking sensors also supplement the information on the vehicle's surroundings.

Operating limits

The system may be disrupted (or even damaged) and not work in the following situations:
– Installation of a bicycle carrier on the tailgate or side-hinged door (depending on version).
– Attachment of a trailer to the towball.
– Driving with a door open.

! Please note, the camera must not be obscured (by a sticker, a bicycle carrier, etc.).

i The field of vision of the camera may vary depending on the load in vehicle.

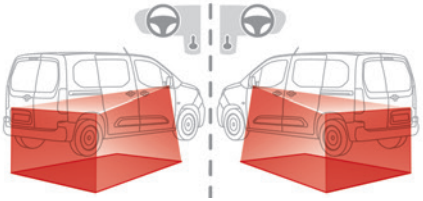
Maintenance recommendations

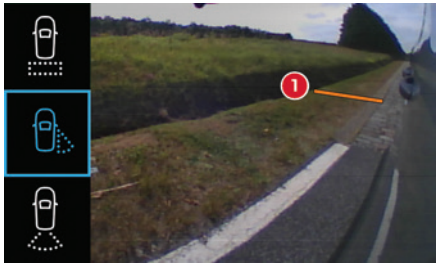
In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the camera is not covered by mud, frost or snow.
Check the cleanliness of the camera lens regularly.
If necessary, clean the camera with a soft, dry cloth.
When washing the vehicle using a high-pressure jet, keep the spray directed at least 30 cm away from the camera.

Surround Rear Vision

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

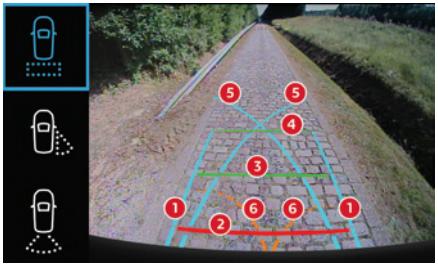
With the ignition on, in order to improve visibility of the passenger side blind spot and the rear of the vehicle, this system uses two cameras to display the views of the vehicle's close surroundings on the reproduction screen (panel van or fitted with a solid partition).
This system has three sub-functions:





– **Passenger side view**: shows the area at the passenger side of the vehicle.
The orange line **1** represents a distance of 5 m from the rear bumper.

– **Surveillance rear view**: shows a long-distance view of the area at the rear.
The orange line **1** represents a distance of 5 m from the rear bumper.



– **Visual reversing assistance**: shows a view of the area close to the rear of the vehicle.
The blue dimension lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle with the mirrors unfolded.
The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear bumper; the two green lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.
The blue curves **5** appear successively; they are based on the position of the steering wheel and represent the turning circle radius of your vehicle.
The orange dashes **6** represent the opening radii of the rear doors.

! Please routinely check your exterior mirrors while driving and during manoeuvres.

! Some items may not be seen by the rear camera.

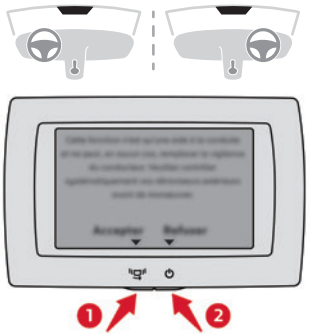
! Certain vehicles may be difficult to see (dark colours, lamps off) when the brightness of the screen is reduced using the vehicle's lighting dimmer.

! The image quality may be affected by the environment, the exterior conditions (rain, dirt, dust), the driving mode and the lighting conditions (night, low sun).
In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.

! Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.
During parking manoeuvres and lane changes, it is important to check the sides of the vehicle using the mirrors.
The rear parking sensors also supplement the information on the vehicle's surroundings.

Activation / Deactivation

The system starts when the ignition is switched on.



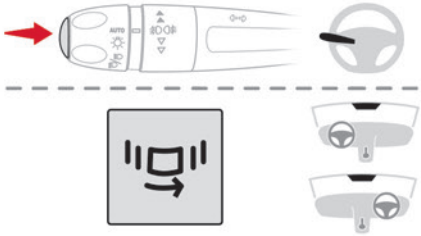
► With the ignition on, press button **2** to switch the reproduction screen on / off.
A message appears.
► Take note of this message and validate with button **1** corresponding to the "**Accept**" response.
The reproduction screen comes on.
► With the engine running, press button **2** to switch the reproduction screen off.

i The function is automatically paused (the reproduction screen becomes grey) **in reverse**, above **9 mph (15 km/h)**.
The function restarts when the vehicle is once more travelling at a speed below this threshold.

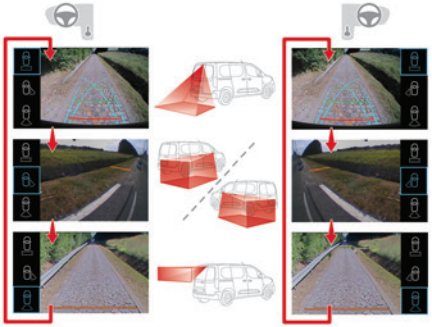
Operation

► **In neutral**, the **monitoring rear view** is displayed by default.

► **When reverse is engaged**, the **visual reversing aid** is displayed on the screen (even if it is switched off).



► **To change the view**, press the end of the lighting control stalk or press the corresponding button located below the screen.



The area around the vehicle is shown by the **monitoring rear view** and the **passenger side view** only.

Operating limits

The system may be disrupted (or even damaged) and not work in the following situations:

– Installation of a bicycle carrier on the tailgate or side-hinged door (depending on version).
– Attachment of a trailer to the towball.
– Driving with a door open.

Please note, the cameras must not be obscured (by a sticker, a bicycle carrier, etc.).

The field of vision of the rear camera (**surveillance rear view** and **visual reversing aid**) may vary depending on the load in the vehicle.

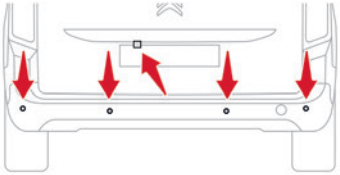
If the side-hinged door is opened during use of the **surveillance rear view** or the **visual aid for reversing**, in forward gear or reverse gear, the output screen becomes grey.
If the front passenger door is opened during use of the **passenger side view**, in forward gear or reverse gear, the output screen becomes grey.

If a trailer is attached to the towball, when reverse gear is engaged the **visual reversing aid** will no longer work until the trailer is disconnected. The **surveillance rear view** becomes the default view.

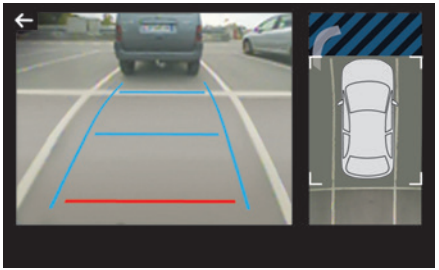
If the system develops a malfunction, go to a CITROËN dealer to avoid any safety problems.

Top Rear Vision

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

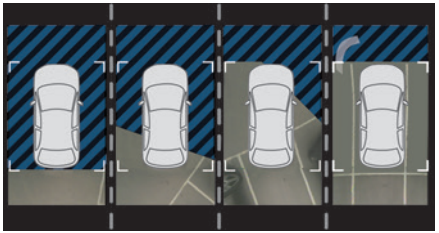


As soon as reverse gear is engaged with the engine running, this system displays views of your vehicle's close surroundings on the touch screen using a camera located at the rear of the vehicle.



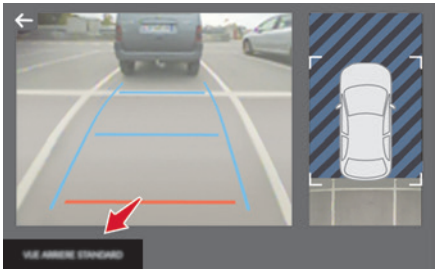
The screen is divided into two parts with a contextual view and a view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings.
The parking sensors supplement the information on the view from above the vehicle.
Various contextual views may be displayed:
– Standard view.
– 180° view.
– Zoom view.
AUTO mode is activated by default.
In this mode, the system chooses the best view to display (standard or zoom).
You can change the type of view at any time during a manoeuvre.
The system status is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

Principle of operation



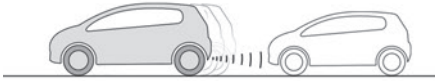
Using the rear camera, the vehicle's close surroundings are recorded during manoeuvres at low speed.
An image from above your vehicle in its close surroundings is reconstructed (represented between the brackets) in real time and as the manoeuvre progresses.
It facilitates the alignment of your vehicle when parking and allows obstacles close to the vehicle to be seen. It is automatically deleted if the vehicle remains stationary for too long.

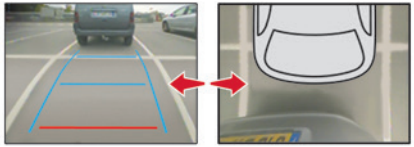
Rear view



To activate the camera located on the tailgate, engage reverse gear and do not exceed a speed of 6 mph (10 km/h).
The system is deactivated:
– Automatically, at speeds above approximately 6 mph (10 km/h),
– Automatically, if the tailgate is opened.
– Upon changing out of reverse gear (the image remains displayed for 7 seconds).
– By pressing the white arrow in the upper-left corner of the touch screen.

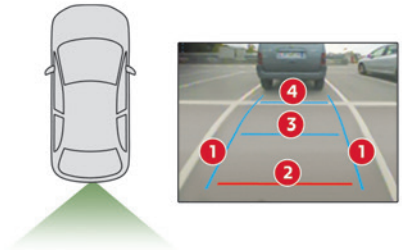
AUTO mode





This mode is activated by default.
Using sensors in the rear bumper, the automatic view changes from the rear view (standard) to the view from above (zoom) as an obstacle is approached at the level of the red line (less than 30 cm) during a manoeuvre.

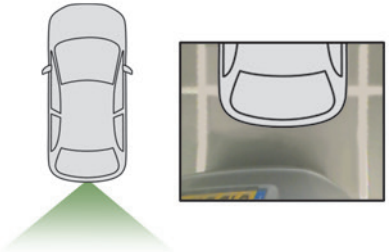
Standard view



The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.

The blue lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes according to the position of the steering wheel.
The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear bumper; the two blue lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.
This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

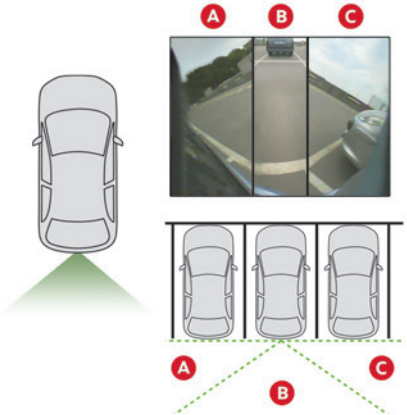
Zoom view



The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the rear of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around nearby obstacles.
This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.
It is important to monitor the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors.
Parking sensors also provide additional information about the area around the vehicle.

180° view



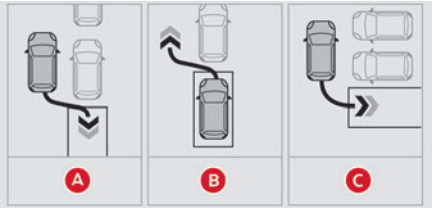
The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking space, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists.
This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.
It features 3 areas: left **A**, centre **B** and right **C**.

This view is only available via the view selection menu.

Park Assist

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system provides active parking assistance: it detects a parking space and then steers in the appropriate direction to park in the space while the driver controls the driving direction, gear changes, acceleration and braking.
To help the driver monitor the manoeuvre, the system automatically triggers the display from the Top Rear Vision function and activates the parking sensors.
The system measures the available parking spaces and calculates the distances to obstacles using ultrasonic sensors built into the front and rear bumpers of the vehicle.



The system assists with the following manoeuvres:
A. Entering a "parallel" parking space
B. Leaving a "parallel" parking space
C. Entering a "bay" parking space

Operation

► When approaching a parking area, reduce the speed of your vehicle to 19 mph (30 km/h) or less.

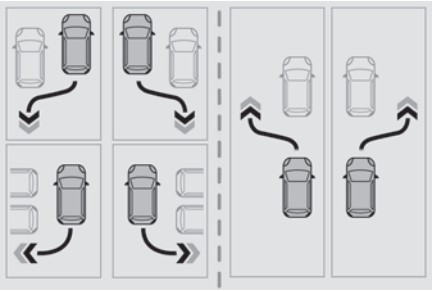
Activating the function

The function is activated in the **Vehicle/Driving** touch screen menu.
Select "**Park Assist**".

! Activating the function deactivates the Blind spot monitoring system.

i You can deactivate the function at any time until the parking space entry or exit manoeuvre begins, by pressing the arrow located in the top left-hand corner of the display page.

Selecting the type of manoeuvre



A manoeuvre selection page is displayed on the touch screen: by default, the "Entry" page if the vehicle has been running since the ignition was switched on, otherwise, the "Exit" page.
► Select the type and side of the manoeuvre to activate the parking space search.
The selected manoeuvre can be changed at any time, even while searching for an available space.

This indicator lamp comes on to confirm the selection.

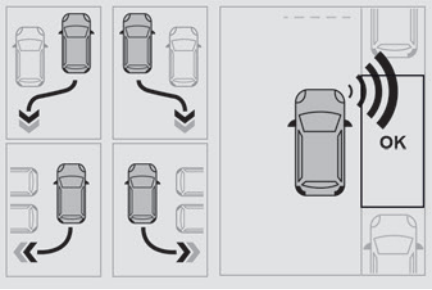
Parking space search

► You should drive at a distance of between 0.50 m and 1.50 m from the row of parked vehicles, without ever exceeding 19 mph (30 km/h), until the system finds an available space.
The parking space search is suspended at higher speeds. The function is automatically

deactivated if the vehicle speed exceeds 31 mph (50 km/h).

For "parallel" parking, the space must at a minimum be equal to the length of your vehicle plus 0.60 m.
For "bay" parking, the width of the space must be equal to the width of your vehicle plus 0.70 m.

If the parking sensors function has been deactivated in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu, it will be automatically reactivated when the system is activated.



When the system finds an available space, "**OK**" is displayed on the parking view, accompanied by an audible signal.

Preparing for the manoeuvre

► Move very slowly until the request to stop the vehicle is displayed: "**Stop the vehicle**", accompanied by the "**STOP**" sign and an audible signal.
Once the vehicle has stopped, an instructions page is displayed on the screen.
► To prepare for the manoeuvre, follow the instructions.
The start of the manoeuvre is indicated by the message "**Manoeuvre under way**", accompanied by an audible signal.
Reversing is indicated by this message: "**Release the steering wheel, reverse**".
The Top Rear Vision function and the parking sensors are automatically activated to help you monitor your vehicle's close surroundings during the manoeuvre.

During the manoeuvre

The system controls the vehicle's steering. It gives instructions on the manoeuvring direction when starting "parallel" entry and exit parking manoeuvres, and for all "bay" entry manoeuvres.
These instructions are displayed as a symbol accompanied by a message:

"Reverse".

"Go forwards".

The manoeuvring status is indicated by these symbols:

Manoeuvre in progress (green).

Manoeuvre cancelled or finished (red) (the arrows indicate that the driver must resume control of the vehicle).
The maximum speeds during manoeuvres are indicated by these symbols:

5 mph or 7 km/h, for parking space entry.

3 mph or 5 km/h, for parking space exit.

During manoeuvring phases, the steering wheel performs rapid turns: do not hold the steering wheel or put your hands between the spokes of the steering wheel. Watch out for any objects that could interfere with the manoeuvre (loose clothing, scarf, tie, etc.). Risk of injury!
It is the driver's responsibility to constantly monitor the traffic, especially vehicles coming towards you.
The driver should check that no objects or people are obstructing the vehicle's path.

The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen may be distorted by the terrain.
In shady areas, or in inadequate sunlight or lighting conditions, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.

The manoeuvre can be permanently interrupted at any time, either by the driver or automatically by the system.

Interruption by the driver:
– taking over control of the steering.
– activating the direction indicator lamps on the opposite side to that of the manoeuvre.
– unfastening the driver's seat belt.
– switching off the ignition.
Interruption by the system:
– vehicle exceeding the speed limit of 5 mph (7 km/h) during parking space entry manoeuvres, or 3 mph (5 km/h) during parking space exit manoeuvres.
– activation of anti-slip regulation on a slippery road.
– opening of a door or the boot.
– engine stall.
– system malfunction.
– after 10 manoeuvres to enter or exit a parallel parking space and after 7 manoeuvres to enter a parking bay.
Interrupting the manoeuvre automatically deactivates the function.
The manoeuvre symbol is displayed in red, accompanied by the "**Manoeuvre cancelled**" message on the touch screen.
A message prompts the driver to take back control of the vehicle.
The function is deactivated after a few seconds; this indicator lamp goes off and the function returns to the initial display.

End of the parking space entry or exit manoeuvre

The vehicle stops as soon as the manoeuvre is completed.
The manoeuvre symbol is displayed in red, accompanied by the message "**Manoeuvre completed**" on the touch screen.
When the function is deactivated, this indicator lamp goes off, accompanied by an audible signal.
When entering a parking space, the driver may be required to complete the manoeuvre.

Operating limits

– The system may suggest an inappropriate parking space (parking prohibited, work in progress with damaged road surface, location alongside a ditch, etc.).
– The system may indicate that a space has been found but will not offer it because of a fixed obstacle on the opposite side of the manoeuvre, which would not allow the vehicle to follow a trajectory required for parking.
– The system may indicate that a space has been found but the manoeuvre will not be triggered, because the width of the lane is insufficient.
– The system is not designed for performing the parking manoeuvre on a sharp bend.
– The system does not detect spaces that are much larger than the vehicle itself or that are delimited by obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs, etc.) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences, etc.).
– If the boot is heavily loaded, the tilt of the vehicle towards the rear may interfere with the distance measurements.

! Do not use the function under the following exterior conditions:
– Alongside a soft shoulder (e.g. ditch) or quay or on the edge of a drop.
– When the road surface is slippery (e.g. ice).

! If any of the following malfunctions occurs, do not use the system:
– If a tyre is under-inflated.
– If one of the bumpers is damaged.
– If one of the cameras is faulty.

! If the vehicle has undergone any of the following modifications, do not use the function:
– When carrying an object extending beyond the dimensions of the vehicle (ladder on the roof bars, bicycle carrier on the tailgate, etc.).
– With a non-approved towball in place.
– With snow chains fitted.
– When driving on a small-diameter or "space-saver" type spare wheel.
– When the wheels fitted are a different size from the original ones.
– After modifying one or both bumpers (added protection).

– If the sensors have been repainted other than by the CITROËN dealer network.
– With sensors not approved for the vehicle.

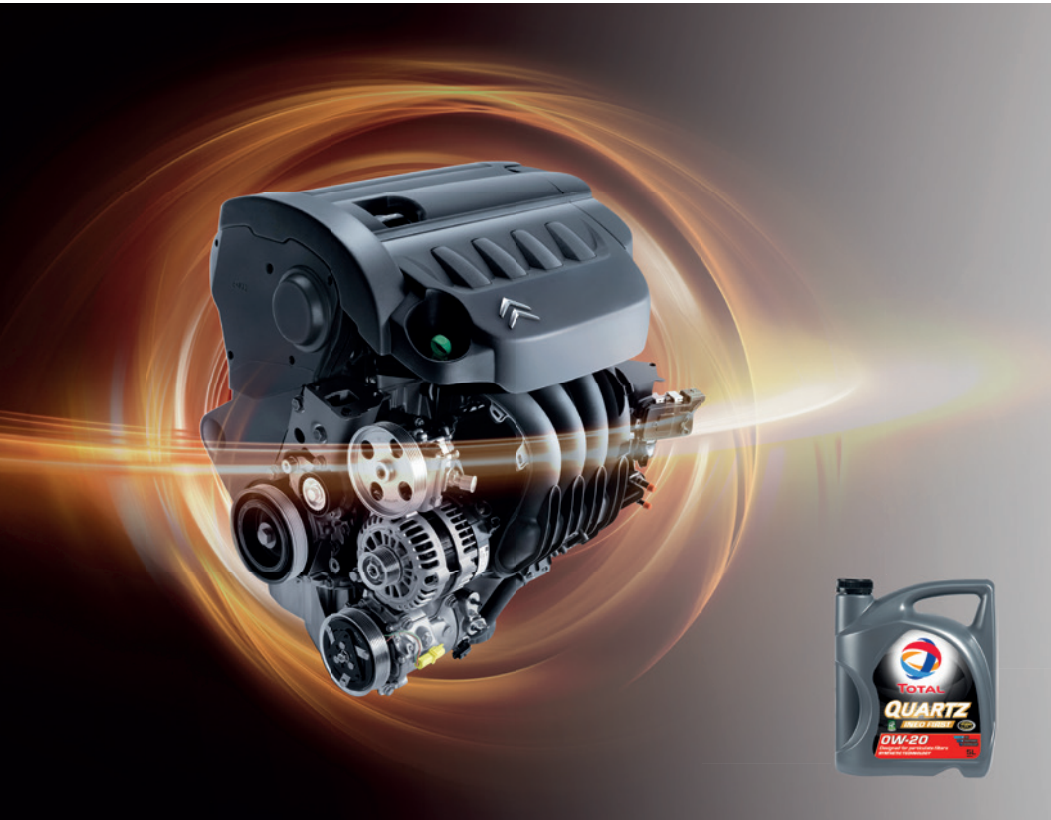
Malfunctions

When the function is not activated, this indicator lamp will flash briefly and an audible signal will be emitted to indicate a system malfunction.
If the malfunction occurs while the system is in use, the indicator lamp goes off.

If the parking sensor malfunction occurs during use, indicated by this warning lamp coming on, it causes the function to deactivate.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a power steering malfunction, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by a warning message.

You must stop the vehicle.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



FILL UP WITH CONFIDENCE

WITH TOTAL QUARTZ LUBRICANTS

For more than 50 years, TOTAL and CITROËN have shared common values: excellence, creativity and technological innovation.

It is in this same spirit that TOTAL has developed a range of TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants adapted for engines in CITROËN vehicles, making them ever more fuel efficient and environmentally friendly.

TOTAL and CITROËN test the reliability and the performance of their products under extreme motorsport conditions.

Choose TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants when servicing your vehicle; they are your assurance of optimum engine life and performance.

Compatibility of fuels

E5 E10

Petrol fuels conforming to the EN228 standard containing up to 5% and 10% ethanol respectively.

B7 B10 B20 B30

Diesel fuels conforming to the EN590, EN16734 and EN16709 standards and containing up to 7%, 10%, 20% and 30% fatty acid methyl ester respectively. The use of B20 or B30 fuels, even occasionally, imposes special maintenance conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

XTL

Paraffinic Diesel fuel conforming to the EN15940 standard.

! The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (e.g. pure or diluted vegetable or animal oils, domestic fuel) is strictly prohibited - risk of damaging the engine and fuel system!

i The only fuel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 (petrol) or B715000 (Diesel) standards.

Diesel at low temperature

At temperatures below 0 °C (+32 °F), the formation of paraffins in summer-type Diesel fuels could prevent the engine from operating correctly. In these temperature conditions, use winter-type Diesel fuel and keep the fuel tank more than 50 % full.
At temperatures below -15 °C (+5 °F) to avoid problems starting, it is best to park the vehicle under shelter (heated garage).

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage your vehicle's engine.
In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.
For all additional information, consult a dealer.

Refuelling

Fuel tank capacity: approximately 61 litres (Petrol) or 50 litres (Diesel).
Reserve level: approximately 6 litres.

Low fuel level

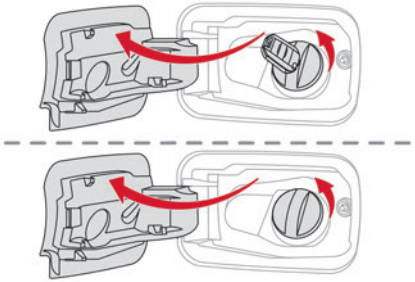
When the low fuel level is reached, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. When it first comes on, **about 6 litres** of fuel remain.
Until sufficient fuel is added, this warning lamp appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by the message and the audible signal. When driving, this message and audible signal are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards **0**.
You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.
For more information on **Running out of fuel (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

i A small arrow by the warning lamp indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located on.

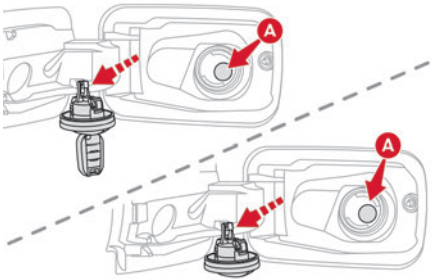
! **Stop & Start**
Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition.

Refuelling

At least 10 litres of fuel must be added, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.
Opening the filler cap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This is entirely normal and results from the sealing of the fuel system.
To refuel in complete safety:
► **Always switch off the engine.**
► Unlock the vehicle using the Keyless Entry and Start.
► Open the fuel filler flap.

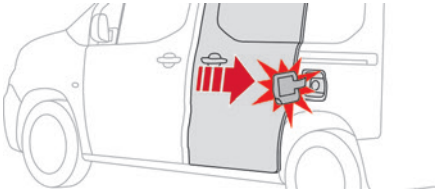


► With a conventional key, insert the key into the filler cap, then turn the key to the left.



► Unscrew and remove the filler cap, then place it on the holder located on the fuel filler flap.
► Insert the nozzle and push it in fully (while pushing on the metal valve **A**).
► Fill the tank. Do not continue past the third cut-off of the nozzle, as this may cause malfunctions.

► Put the filler cap back in place and close it by turning to the right.
► Push the fuel filler flap to close it (your vehicle must be unlocked).



! If the vehicle is equipped with a sliding door on its left-hand side, do not open it while the fuel filler flap is open. Otherwise, there is a risk that the fuel filler flap and the sliding door may be damaged and the person filling up may be injured.

! If the fuel filler flap is open, a device prevents the left-hand side door from opening.
The door can be opened half-way, however. Close the fuel filler flap to regain use of the door.

! If the fuel filler flap is open, a device prevents the left-hand side door from opening.
The door can be opened half-way, however. Close the fuel filler flap to regain use of the door.

The vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

! **If you have put in the wrong fuel for your vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.**

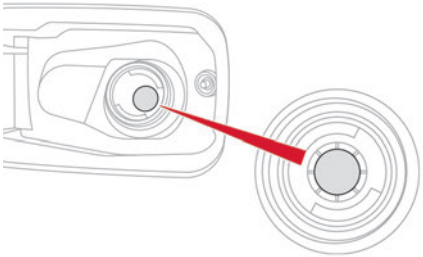
Fuel cut-off

Your vehicle is fitted with a safety system that cuts off the supply of fuel in the event of an impact.

Misfuel prevention (Diesel)

(Depending on country of sale.)
This mechanical device prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol.
Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device is visible when the filler cap is removed.

Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of a Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.
Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

The misfuel prevention device does not prevent filling with a jerrycan, regardless of the fuel type.

Travelling abroad
As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.
Before travelling abroad, it is advisable to check with a CITROËN dealer if the vehicle is suitable for the distribution equipment of the countries visited.

Charging system (Electric)

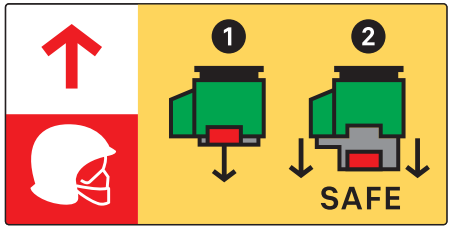
400 V electrical system

The electric drive system, which operates at a voltage of approximately 400 V, is identified by orange cables and its components are marked with this symbol:

An electric vehicle's power train can become hot during use and after switching off the ignition.
Comply with the warning messages shown on the labels, particularly inside the charging flap.

High voltage system voltage is dangerous and can cause burns or other injuries or even fatal electric shock.
Since damage to high voltage components is not visible, CITROËN recommends that you:
– Never touch the components, damaged or not, and never let your jewelry or other metallic objects come into contact with these components.
– Never work on the orange high voltage cables or on any other high voltage component marked with the Electric risk label. Any intervention on the high voltage system must be carried out by qualified persons in workshops qualified and approved to carry out this type of work.
– Never damage, modify or remove the orange high voltage cables or disconnect them from the high voltage network.
– Never open, modify or remove the cover of the traction battery.
– Never work with cutting and forming tools or heat sources near high voltage components and cables.
In case of low level of fluid in the cooling tank, the refilling shall only be performed in a qualified and trained workshop to verify that the leakage is not in the traction battery.
Any intervention on the high voltage system must be carried out by qualified persons in workshops qualified and approved to carry out this type of work.
Damage to the vehicle or the traction battery could result in the leakage of toxic gases or fluids either immediately or later. CITROËN recommends that you:
– Always inform the fire and emergency services in the event of an incident, warning that the vehicle is equipped with a traction battery.
– Never touch the liquids leaking from the traction battery.

– Do not inhale the gases emitted by the traction battery which are toxic.
– Move away from the vehicle in the event of incident or accident, the gases emitted being flammable and could cause a fire.



! This label is intended solely for use by firefighters and maintenance services in the event of any work on the vehicle.
No other person must touch the device shown on this label.

! **In the event of an accident or impact to the vehicle's underbody**
In these situations, the electrical circuit or the traction battery can be seriously damaged.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! **When washing**
Before washing the vehicle, always check that the charging flap is closed correctly.
Never wash the vehicle while the battery is on charge.

! **High-pressure washing**
To avoid damaging the electrical components, it is expressly prohibited to use high-pressure washing in the engine compartment or under the body.
Do not use a pressure greater than 80 bar when washing the bodywork.

! Never allow water or dust to enter the connector or charging nozzle - risk of electrocution or fire!
Never connect / disconnect the charging nozzle or cable with wet hands - risk of electrocution!

Traction battery

This battery stores the energy that powers the electric motor and the thermal comfort equipment in the passenger compartment. It is discharged during use, and must therefore be regularly recharged. There is no need to wait for the traction battery to fall to its reserve level before recharging.
The range of the battery may vary according to the type of driving, the route, the use of thermal comfort equipment and the ageing of its components.

i The lifespan of the traction battery depends on multiple factors, such as climatic conditions, distance travelled and how often it has been fast-charged.

! To preserve the mileage of your vehicle and the durability of your traction battery, CITROËN recommends that you:
– Do not fully charge the battery of your electric vehicle daily (charge the traction battery below 80% as often as possible).
– Do not completely discharge the battery.
– Do not store the vehicle for a long period of non-use (more than 12 hours) when the traction battery has a low or high charge level. Prefer a charge level between 20 and 40%.
– Limit the use of fast charging.
– Do not expose the vehicle to temperatures below -30°C and above +60°C for more than 24 hours.
– Avoid charging the vehicle at negative temperatures (except if the vehicle ran more than 20 minutes) or above +30°C.
– Do not use the vehicle's traction battery as a generator of energy.
– Do not use a generator to recharge your vehicle's traction battery.

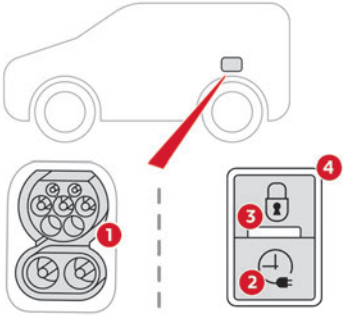
In the event of damage to the traction battery

It is strictly prohibited to work on the vehicle yourself.
Do not touch liquids coming from the battery, and in the event of skin contact with these products, wash abundantly with water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

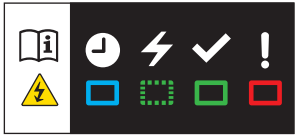
Disposal of the traction battery

The traction battery is designed for the life of the vehicle if the recommendations of CITROËN are followed.
If it becomes necessary to replace the battery, contact the CITROËN dealer for instructions on its disposal. Improper disposal carries the risk of severe burns, electric shock, and damage to the environment.
In accordance with regulations, CITROËN ensures a second life or recycling of this component in collaboration with qualified operators.

Charging connectors and indicator lamps



1. Charging connectors
2. Deferred charging activation button
3. Nozzle locking indicator lamp
   Fixed red: nozzle positioned correctly and locked in the connector.
   Flashing red: nozzle incorrectly positioned or locking not possible.
4. Charging indicator lamp



State of charging indicator lamp	Meaning
Fixed white	Welcome lighting on opening the flap and disconnecting the charging cable.
Fixed blue	Deferred charging.
Flashing green	Charging.
Fixed green	Charging complete. The charging indicator lamp goes off after about 2 minutes as the vehicle's functions go into standby. The indicator lamp comes on again when the vehicle is unlocked with the Keyless Entry and Start system or when a door is opened to indicate that the battery is fully charged.
Fixed red	Malfunction.

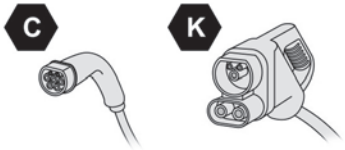
! In case of impact, even light, against the charging flap, do not use it.
Do not dismantle or modify the charging connector - risk of electrocution and/or fire! Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Charging cables, sockets and chargers

The charging cable supplied with the vehicle (depending on version) is compatible with the electrical systems in the country of sale. When travelling abroad, check the compatibility of local electrical systems with the charging cable.
A full range of charging cables is available from your dealer.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for more information and to obtain suitable charging cables.

Identification labels on charging sockets/connectors

Identification labels are affixed to the vehicle, charging cable and charger to inform the user about which device needs to be used.

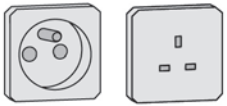


The meaning of each identification label is as follows:

Identification label	Location	Configuration	Power type/Voltage range
C	Charging connector (vehicle side)	TYPE 2	AC < 480 Vrms
C	Charging socket (charger side)	TYPE 2	AC < 480 Vrms
K	Charging connector (vehicle side)	COMBO 2 (FF)	DC 50 V – 500 V

Standard charging, mode 2

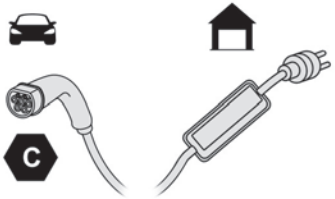
Domestic socket
(standard charging - alternating current (AC))



Mode 2 with a standard socket: 8 A maximum charging current.

Mode 2 with a Green'Up socket: 16 A maximum charging current.
To have this type of socket installed, call a professional installer.

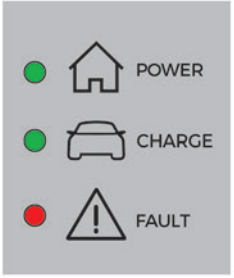
Specific domestic charging cable - mode 2 (AC)



Identification label **C** on the charging connector (vehicle side).

! Specific domestic charging cable (mode 2)
You must not damage the cable.
In the event of damage, do not use it and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to replace it.

Control unit (mode 2)



POWER
Green: electrical connection established; charging can begin.

CHARGE
Flashing green: charging in progress or temperature pre-conditioning activated.
Fixed green: charging complete.

FAULT
Red: fault; charging not permitted or must be stopped immediately. Check that everything is connected correctly and that the electrical system is not faulty.

If the indicator lamp does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Upon plugging the charging cable into a domestic socket, all of the indicator lamps come on briefly.
If no indicator lamps come on, check the domestic socket's circuit-breaker:
– If the circuit-breaker has tripped, contact a professional to check that the electrical system is compatible and/or carry out any necessary repairs.
– If the circuit-breaker has not tripped, stop using the charging cable and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Control unit label - Recommendations

Refer to the handbook before use.

1. Incorrect use of this charging cable may result in fire, property damage and serious injury or death by electrocution!
2. Always use a correctly earthed power socket, protected by a 30 mA residual current device.
3. Always use an electrical socket protected by a circuit-breaker appropriate for the electrical circuit's current rating.

4. The weight of the control unit must not be borne by the electrical socket, plug and cables.
5. Never use this charging cable if it is defective or in any way damaged.
6. Never attempt to repair or open this charging cable. It contains no repairable parts - replace the charging cable if it is damaged.
7. Never immerse this charging cable in water.
8. Never use this charging cable with an extension cable, a multi-plug socket, a conversion adaptor or on a damaged electrical socket.
9. Do not unplug the plug from the wall as a means of stopping charging.
10. Immediately stop charging, by locking and then unlocking the vehicle using the remote control key, if the charging cable or wall socket feel burning hot to the touch.
11. This charging cable includes components liable to cause electrical arcing or sparks. Do not expose to flammable vapours.
12. Only use this charging cable with CITROËN vehicles.
13. Never plug the cable into the wall socket (or unplug it) with wet hands.
14. Do not force the connector if it is locked into the vehicle.

Control unit label - State of indicator lamps

	State of the indicator lamp
Off	○
On	● ●
Flashing	● ●

POWER	CHARGE	FAULT	Symbol	Description
○	○	○		Not connected to the power supply or power is not available from the infrastructure.
● (green)	● (green)	● (red)		The control unit is currently performing a self-test.
● (green)	○	○		Connected only to the infrastructure or to the infrastructure and to the Electric Vehicle (EV) but no charging in progress.

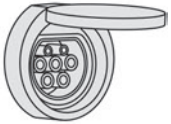
POWER	CHARGE	FAULT	Symbol	Description
(green)	(green)			Connected to the power supply and to the Electric Vehicle (EV). The EV is on charge or in a temperature pre-conditioning sequence.
(green)	(green)		100%	Connected to the power supply and to the Electric Vehicle (EV). The EV is waiting for charging or the charging of the EV is completed.
		(red)		Control unit malfunction. No charging allowed. If an error indicator reappears after a manual reset, the control unit must be checked by a CITROËN dealer before the next charge.
(green)	(green)	(red)		The control unit is in diagnostic mode.

Manual reset procedure

The control unit can be reset by simultaneously disconnecting the charging connector and the wall socket.
Then, reconnect the wall socket first. For more information, refer to the handbook.

Accelerated charging, mode 3

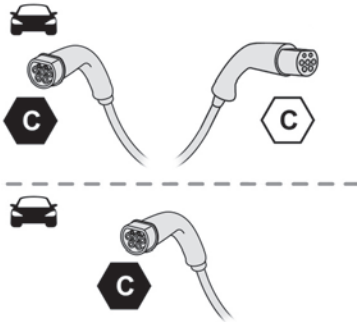
Accelerated charging unit (depending on version)
(accelerated charging - single-phase or three-phase alternating current (AC))



In mode 3 with an accelerated charging unit: 32 A maximum charging current.

In mode 3 with an accelerated charging unit (Wallbox): 32 A maximum charging current.

Charging cable, mode 3 (AC)



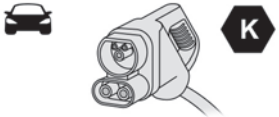
Identification labels **C** on the charging connector (vehicle side) and on the socket (charger side).

! Accelerated charging unit
Do not disassemble or modify the charging unit - risk of electrocution and/or fire! Refer to the charging unit manufacturer's user manual for the operating instructions.

Superfast charging, mode 4

Fast public charger
(superfast charging - direct current (DC))

Charging cable, mode 4 (DC)
(integrated into the fast public charger)



Identification label **K** on the charging connector (vehicle side).
Only use fast public chargers where the cable length does not exceed 30 metres.

Charging the traction battery (Electric)

To recharge, connect the vehicle to a domestic electricity supply (domestic or accelerated charging) or to a fast public charger (superfast charging).

For a full charge, follow the desired charging procedure without pausing it, until it ends automatically. Charging can be either immediate or deferred (except fast public charger, mode 4).
You can stop domestic or accelerated charging at any time by unlocking the vehicle and removing the nozzle. For superfast charging, refer to the fast public charger.
For more information on the charging displays on the **Instrument panel** and the **Touch screen**, refer to the corresponding section.

i It is also possible to monitor the charging progress using the **MyCitroën App** application.
For more information on **Remote functions**, refer to the corresponding section.

! As a safety measure, the engine will not start if the charging cable is plugged into the connector on the vehicle. A warning is displayed on the instrument panel.

i **Cooling the traction battery**
The cooling fan in the engine compartment comes on during charging to cool the on-board charger and the traction battery.

! **Low load / Driving**
Driving when the charge level of the traction battery is too low can lead to the vehicle breaking down and can lead to accidents or serious injuries. ALWAYS make sure the traction battery has a sufficient charge level.

! **Low load / Parking**
If the outside temperature is negative, it is recommended not to park your vehicle outside for several hours at a low load (less than 20%).

! **Vehicle in storage for more than 1 month**
In the event of a long period of non-use of the vehicle (beyond 4 weeks) without the possibility of charging when restarting, the self-discharge may make it impossible to restart if the traction battery charge level is a low or very low, especially at negative ambient temperatures. ALWAYS make sure that the traction battery has a charge between 20% and 40% if you do not plan to use your vehicle for several weeks.
Do not connect the charging cable.
Always park the vehicle in a place with temperatures between -10°C and 30°C (parking in a place with extreme temperatures can damage the traction battery).
Disconnect the cable from the (+) terminal of the accessory battery in the engine compartment.
Connect a 12 V battery charger to the (+) and (-) terminals of the accessory battery about every 3 months in order to recharge the accessory battery and maintain an operating voltage.

Precautions

Our electric vehicles have been developed in accordance with the recommendations on the maximum limits for electromagnetic fields, as issued by the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP - 1998 Guidelines).

Wearers of pacemakers or equivalent devices

Ask your doctor about what precautions you should take, or ask the manufacturer of your implanted electro-medical device about whether its operation is guaranteed in an environment which complies with the ICNIRP recommendations.

! **If in doubt**
Domestic or accelerated charging: do not remain inside or near the vehicle, or near the charging cable or charging unit, even for a short time.
Superfast charging: do not use the system yourself and avoid approaching public fast charging points. Leave the area and ask a third party to recharge the vehicle.

For domestic or accelerated charging

Before charging
Depending on the context:
► Have a professional check that the electrical system to be used complies with applicable standards and is compatible with the vehicle.
► Have a professional electrician install a dedicated domestic power socket or accelerated charging unit (Wallbox) compatible with the vehicle.
You should preferably use the charging cable available as an accessory.
For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

During charging
While charging is in progress, unlocking the vehicle will cause the charging to stop.
If no action is taken on one of the openings (door or boot) or on the charging nozzle, the vehicle will lock again after 30 seconds and charging will resume automatically.
Never work under the bonnet:
– Some areas remain very hot, even an hour after charging ends - risk of burns!
– The fan may start at any time - risk of cuts or strangulation!

After charging
Check that the charging flap is closed.

Do not leave the cable connected to the domestic power socket - risk of short-circuit or electrocution in the event of contact with or immersion in water!

For superfast charging

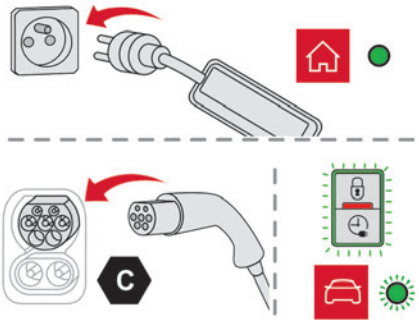
Before charging
Check that the fast public charging station and its charging cable are compatible with the vehicle.
If the exterior temperature is below:
– 0°C, charging times may be extended.
– -20°C, charging is still possible, but charging times may be extended even further (the battery has to be heated first).

After charging
Check that the charging flap is closed.

Connection

► Before charging, check that the drive selector is in mode **P**, otherwise charging is not possible.
► Open the charging flap by pressing the push-button, and check that there are no foreign bodies on the charging connector.

Domestic charging, mode 2



► Connect the charging cable from the control unit to the domestic socket.
When the connection is made, all of the indicator lamps on the control unit light up, then only the **POWER** indicator lamp remains on in green.
► Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.
► Insert the nozzle into the charging connector.
The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing green **CHARGE** indicator lamps in the flap, then those on the control unit.
If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that all connections are properly established.
The red indicator lamp in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

When charging is complete and while the charging cable is still connected, opening

the driver's door will display the charge level on the instrument panel for about 20 seconds.

Accelerated charging, mode 3

► Follow the accelerated charging unit (Wallbox) user instructions.
► Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.
► Insert the nozzle into the charging connector.
The start of charging is confirmed when the charging indicator lamp in the flap flashes green.
If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that the connection has been properly established.
The red indicator lamp in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

Superfast charging, mode 4

► Depending on version, remove the protective cover from the lower part of the connector.
► Follow the instructions for use of the fast public charger and connect the cable from the fast public charger to the vehicle's connector.
The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing green charging indicator lamp in the flap.
If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that the connection is properly established.
The red indicator lamp in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

Deferred charging

Settings

At a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop, with touch screen BLUETOOTH audio system

By default, the deferred charging start time is set to midnight (vehicle time).
You can have the deferred charging start time modified.
Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

On a smartphone or tablet

You can programme the deferred charging function at any time via the **MyCitroën App** application.
For more information on **Remote functions**, refer to the corresponding section.

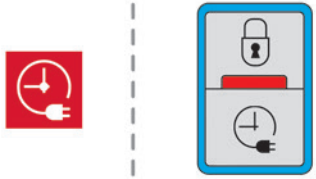
In the vehicle, with CITROËN Connect Nav

► In the **Energy** touch screen menu, select the **Charge** page.
► Set the charging start time.
► Press **OK**.
The setting is saved in the system.

Activation

Deferred charging is only possible with modes 2 and 3.

► After programming the deferred charging, connect your vehicle to the desired charging equipment.



► Press this button in the flap within one minute to activate the system (confirmed by the charging indicator lamp coming on in blue).
► Lock the vehicle.

Disconnection

Before disconnecting the nozzle from the charging connector:
► If the vehicle is unlocked, **lock it and then unlock it**.

► If the vehicle is locked, unlock it.
The red indicator lamp in the flap goes out to confirm that the charging nozzle is unlocked.
► In modes 2 and 3, remove the charging nozzle within **30 seconds**.

The locking of the nozzle is linked to the locking of the loading area. For more information on **Complete or selective unlocking**, refer to the corresponding section.

The charging indicator lamp comes on in white.

With selective door unlocking activated, press the unlocking button twice to disconnect the charging nozzle.

When charging is complete, the green charging indicator lamp in the flap goes out after about 2 minutes.

Domestic charging, mode 2

The end of charging is confirmed when the green **CHARGE** indicator lamp on the control unit and the green charging indicator lamp in the flap come on fixed.
► Replace the protective cover on the charging nozzle and close the charging flap.
► Disconnect the control unit end of the charging cable from the domestic socket.

Accelerated charging, mode 3

The end of charging is indicated by the charging control unit and by the fixed lighting of the green indicator lamp in the flap.
► Hang up the nozzle on the charging unit and close the charging flap.

Superfast charging, mode 4

The end of charging is indicated by the charger and by the fixed lighting of the green indicator lamp in the flap.

► You can also pause charging by pressing this button in the flap (in mode 4 only).
► Hang up the nozzle on the charger.
► Depending on version, replace the protective cover on the lower section and close the charging flap.

When the charging nozzle is disconnected, a message on the instrument panel indicates that charging is complete, even if the charging nozzle was disconnected before full charging was completed.

Energy economy mode

This system manages the duration of use of certain functions, in order to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery with the ignition off.
After switching off the engine and for a maximum cumulative period of around 30 minutes, you can continue to use functions such as the audio and telematics system, dipped beam headlamps or courtesy lamps.

Selecting the mode

A confirmation message is displayed when energy economy mode is entered, and the active functions are placed on standby.

If a telephone call is in progress at the time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes via the audio system's hands-free system.

Exiting the mode

These functions are automatically reactivated the next time the vehicle is used.
To restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:
– For less than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 5 minutes.
– For more than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 30 minutes.
Let the engine run for the specified duration to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.
To recharge the battery, avoid repeatedly or continuously restarting the engine.

A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Load reduction mode

This system manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning and the heated rear screen.
The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

! Snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

i Observe the legislation in force in your country relating to the use of snow chains and maximum authorised speeds.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Link size: (mm)
195/65 R15	9
205/60 R16	
205/55 R17	
215/65 R16	
215/60 R17	Cannot be fitted with chains

You can also use snow socks.
For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Installation tips

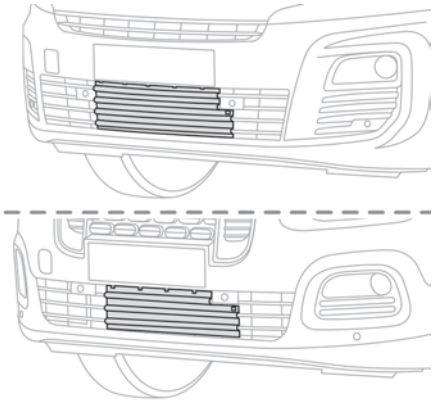
► To fit the snow chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface at the side of the road.
► Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of the vehicle.
► Fit the snow chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
► Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
► Stop the vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

i It is strongly recommended that you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface before setting off.

! Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging the vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Very cold climate screen

(Depending on country of sale)
This removable device prevents the accumulation of snow around the radiator cooling fan.

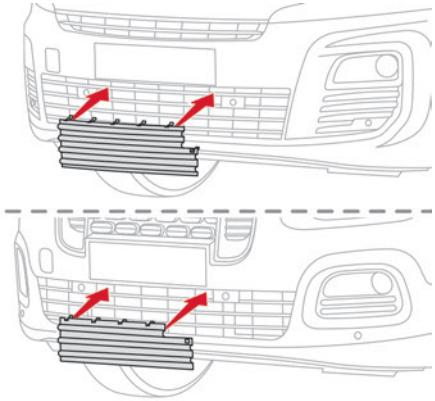


In case of difficulty with installation/ removal
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Before any operation, ensure that the engine is off and the cooling fan has stopped.

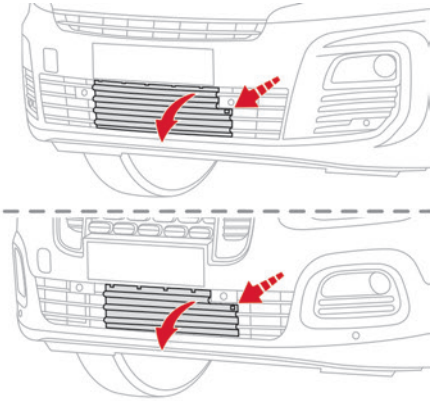
It is essential to remove them when:
– the outside temperature exceeds 10°C.
– recovery is in progress.
– the speed is above 75 mph (120 km/h).

Fitting



► Hold the screen in front of the lower grille of the bumper.
► First insert the upper and side fixing brackets into the bumper.
► Tilt the screen downwards to engage the lower part of the screen into the bumper.
► Check that the unit is firmly held by pressing around the edges.

Removing



► Insert a finger into the notch in the upper part of the screen.
► Pull towards you to unclip the unit.

Towing device

Depending on version, the vehicle is fitted with the necessary equipment to allow a towing device to be installed.
To install a towing device, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Load distribution
► Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle, and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.
Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum towable load must be reduced by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude.

Use genuine towing devices and wiring harnesses approved by CITROËN. We recommend having them fitted by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, they must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.
Certain driving or manoeuvring aid functions are automatically deactivated while an approved towing system is in use.
For more information about driving with a towing device fitted to a trailer and associated with the **Trailer stability assist**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Comply with the maximum authorised towable weight, as indicated on your vehicle's registration certificate, on the manufacturer's label and in the **Technical data** section of this guide.

! If using accessories attached to the towing device (e.g. bicycle carriers, tow boxes):
– Comply with the maximum authorised nose weight.
– Do not transport more than 4 conventional bicycles or 2 electric bicycles.
When loading bicycles onto a bicycle carrier on a towball, be sure to place the heaviest bicycles as close as possible to the vehicle.

! Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.

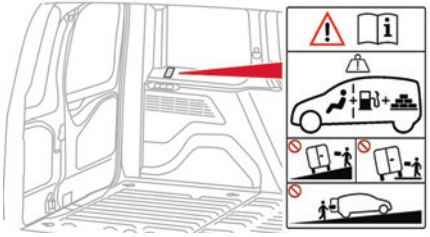
i **Electric motor**
An electric vehicle may be fitted with a towing device.
It is therefore possible to tow a trailer or caravan.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop for more information and to obtain a suitable towing device.

Overload indicator

The overload indicator is a driving aid and informs you that the **maximum authorised weight** has been exceeded; this may be either the gross vehicle weight (GVW) or the maximum authorised weight on either axle (front and rear) (GAWR).

! The indicator does not relieve the user from their responsibility.

i Even if you correctly measure the weight of the vehicle's load, any factor that may vary this weight (driver/additional passengers seated or taking on additional fuel) after the measurement may put the vehicle into the overload condition.

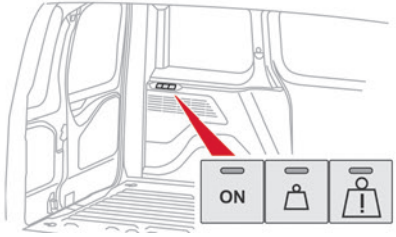


! The load includes the weight of the items stored in the loading area (including any fittings such as shelves), but also the weight of all persons on board the vehicle, the amount of fuel (depending on version) and various equipment fitted on the vehicle.
For optimal performance, the vehicle must be parked and loaded on level ground (avoid the following conditions: parking on a slope or straddling a pavement).

! Attaching a trailer to your vehicle may affect the operation of the system.

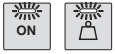
Operation

The weight on board your vehicle is measured:
► When the engine starts, automatically.



► When stationary, by pressing this button in the loading area. The system is then active for 5 minutes.

Display of the measurement in the loading area



If the weight on board the vehicle **is nearly up to the maximum authorised value**, the indicator lamps of these buttons come on.

If the weight on board the vehicle **exceeds the maximum authorised value**, the indicator lamps of these buttons come on.

Display of the measurement on the instrument panel

If the weight on board the vehicle **exceeds the maximum authorised value**, this indicator lamp comes on.

Malfunction

Display of the malfunction in the loading area

After the measurement is triggered from the loading area, the LEDs of the 3 buttons flash simultaneously for about 3 seconds and then go out.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Information displayed on the instrument panel

These warning lamps come on, together with a message.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Roof bars / Roof rack

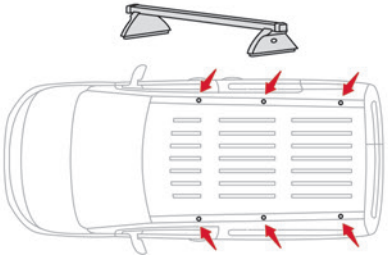
Recommendations
Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides.
Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
Secure the load firmly.
Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and its stability may be affected.
Regularly check the security and tight fastening of the roof bars and racks, at least before each trip.
Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

In the event of loading (**not exceeding** 40 cm in height) on the roof, **do not exceed** the following loads:
– Transverse bars on longitudinal bars: **80 kg**.
– Two transverse bars bolted to the roof: **100 kg**.
– Three transverse bars bolted to the roof: **150 kg**.
– An aluminium rack: **120 kg**.
– A steel rack: **115 kg**.
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars or the roof rack and the fixings on the vehicle.

Refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects that are longer than the vehicle.

In the event of loading a 7-seat model (**not exceeding** 40 cm in height) on the roof, **do not exceed** the following loads:
– Three transverse bars bolted to the roof: **100 kg**.
– An aluminium rack: **70 kg**.
– A steel rack: **65 kg**.

As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use the roof bars and racks approved for your vehicle.
Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars and racks.



To fit the transverse roof bars or a roof rack, use the fixing points provided for this purpose:
► Remove the fixing covers installed on the vehicle.
► Put each fixing in place and lock them on the roof one by one.
► Ensure that the roof bars or the roof rack are correctly fitted (by shaking them).
The bars are adaptable for each fixing point.

Bonnet

Stop & Start
Before doing anything under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition to avoid any risk of the engine restarting automatically.
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan or in certain moving components - risk of strangulation and serious injury!

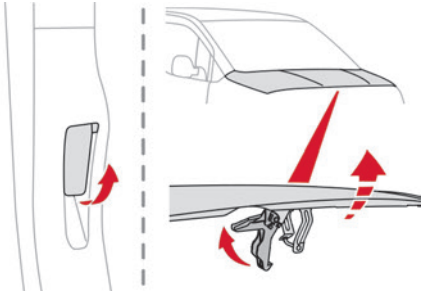
The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents the bonnet being opened when the left-hand front door is closed.

When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns), using the protected area.
When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch.
Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

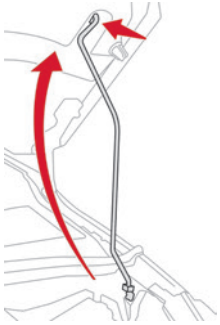
Cooling of the engine when stopped
The engine cooling fan may start after the engine has been switched off.
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the fan!

Opening

► Open the left-hand front door.



► Pull the interior release lever, located at the bottom of the door frame, towards you.
► Lift the exterior safety catch and raise the bonnet.



► Unclip the stay from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

Closing

► Hold the bonnet and pull out the stay from the support slot.
► Clip the stay in its housing.
► Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.
► Pull on the bonnet to check that it is locked correctly.

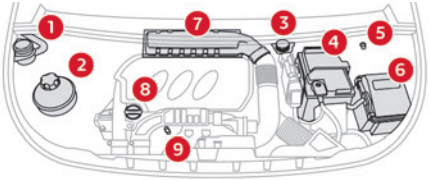
Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

Engine compartment

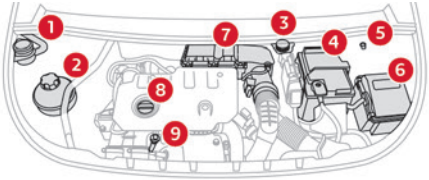
The engine shown here is an example for illustrative purposes only.

The locations of the following components may vary:
– Air filter.
– Engine oil dipstick.
– Engine oil filler cap.

Petrol engine



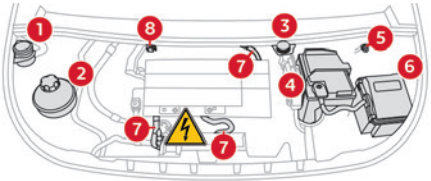
Diesel engine



1. Screenwash fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Battery/Fuses
5. Remote earth point (-)
6. Fusebox
7. Air filter
8. Engine oil filler cap
9. Engine oil dipstick

Diesel fuel system
This system is under very high pressure.
All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop

Electric motor



1. Screenwash fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir (level only)
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Battery/Fuses
5. Remote earth point (-)
6. Fusebox
7. 400 V electrical circuit
8. Emergency circuit-breaker for emergency services and maintenance technicians

For more information on the **Charging system (Electric)**, refer to the corresponding section.

Checking levels

Check all of the following levels regularly in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if required, unless otherwise indicated.

If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The fluids must comply with the manufacturer's requirements and with the vehicle's engine.

Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health and very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Empty used oil into the containers reserved for this purpose at a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Engine oil

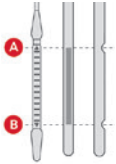
The level is checked, with the engine having been switched off for at least 30 minutes and on level ground, either using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel when the

ignition is switched on (for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge), or using the dipstick.
It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). It is recommended that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

! In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Checking using the dipstick

For the location of the dipstick, please refer to the illustration of the corresponding engine compartment.
► Grasp the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
► Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean, lint-free cloth.



► Reinsert the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to visually check the oil level: the correct level is between marks **A (max)** and **B (min).**
Do not start the engine if the level is:
– above mark **A**: contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
– below mark **B**: top up the engine oil immediately.

! **Oil grade**
Before topping up or changing the engine oil, check that the oil is suitable for your engine and complies with the recommendations in the service schedule supplied with the vehicle (or available from your CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop). Use of non-recommended oil may invalidate your warranty in the event of engine failure.

Topping up the engine oil level

For the location of the engine oil filler cap, please refer to the corresponding engine compartment illustration.
► Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
► Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
► Top up the level if necessary.
► After checking the level, carefully screw the oil filler cap back on and replace the dipstick in its tube.

i The oil level indication displayed on the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on is not valid for 30 minutes following an addition of oil.

Brake fluid

The level of this fluid should be close to the "**MAX**" mark. If not, check the brake pads for wear.
To know how often the brake fluid should be replaced, refer to the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

! Clean the cap before removing it to refill. Use only DOT4 brake fluid from a sealed container.

Engine coolant

It is normal to top up this fluid between two services.
The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.
A level of coolant that is too low risks causing major damage to the engine; the coolant level must be close to the "**MAX**" mark without ever going above it.
If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to top it up.
When the engine is hot, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.
As the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.
In order to avoid the risk of scalding if you need to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.

Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

Vehicle with electric motor

Do not top up the coolant.

If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Screenwash fluid

Top up to the required level when necessary.

Capacity of the tank:

– 5.3 litres for "very cold climate" versions.
– 2.2 litres for other versions.

Fluid specification

The fluid must be topped up with a pre-mixed product.

In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid containing an anti-freeze agent which is appropriate for the temperature conditions must be used in order to protect the system's components (pump, tank, ducts, jets).

Filling with pure water is prohibited in all circumstances (risk of freezing, limescale, etc.).

Diesel fuel additive (Diesel with particle filter)

On reaching the minimum level in the particle filter additive tank, one of these warning lamps comes on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a warning message.

Topping up

The topping up of this additive must be carried out quickly.

Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

AdBlue® (BlueHDi)

An alert is triggered when the reserve level is reached.

For more information on the **Indicators** and in particular the AdBlue range indicators, refer to the corresponding section.

To avoid the vehicle being immobilised in accordance with regulations, you must top up the AdBlue tank.

For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi)**, and in particular the supply of AdBlue, refer to the corresponding section.

Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.

Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification.

In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products.

12 V battery

The battery does not require any maintenance.

Check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick-release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

For more information on the precautions to take before any work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specifications.

Its replacement should be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Passenger compartment filter

Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary**.

A clogged passenger compartment filter can adversely affect air conditioning system performance and generate undesirable odours.

Air filter

Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary**.

Oil filter

Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Particle filter (Diesel)

/ The start of clogging of the particle filter is indicated by the temporary lighting of this warning lamp, accompanied by an alert message.
As soon as traffic conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h), with an engine speed above 2,500 rpm, for about 15 minutes (until the warning lamp goes out).

If it is not possible to reach 37 mph (60 km/h), leave the engine running at idle for about 15 minutes, then drive with an engine speed above 2,500 rpm for 15 minutes.

Do not switch off the engine until the filter is fully regenerated; repeated intervals can degrade the engine oil prematurely. Regenerating the filter while the vehicle is stationary is not recommended.

If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low Diesel additive level. For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice water vapour coming from the exhaust while accelerating. These emissions have no impact on the vehicle's behaviour and the environment.

New vehicle
During the first few particle filter regeneration operations, you may notice a "burning" smell. This is perfectly normal.

Manual gearbox

The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Automatic gearbox

The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Drive selector

The drive selector does not require any maintenance.

Brake pads

Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.
Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

After washing the vehicle, moisture, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Gently dab the brakes to dry and defrost them.

Brake disc wear

For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual parking brake

If you notice excessive brake lever travel or decreased effectiveness, the parking

brake must be adjusted, even between two services.
This system must be checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric parking brake

This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in the event of a problem, do not hesitate to have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

Wheels and tyres

The inflation pressure of all tyres, including the spare wheel, must be checked on "cold" tyres.
The pressures indicated on the tyre pressure label are valid for "cold" tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at over 31 mph (50 km/h), add 0.3 bar (30 kPa) to the values indicated on the label.

Under-inflation increases energy consumption. Non-compliant tyre pressures cause tyres to wear prematurely and have an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding - risk of accident!

Driving with worn or damaged tyres reduces the braking and road holding performance of the vehicle. Regularly check the condition of the tyres (tread and sidewalls) and rims as well as the presence of the valve caps.
When the wear indicators no longer appear set back from the tread, the depth of the grooves is less than 1.6 mm; replace the tyres as soon as possible.
Using different size wheels and tyres from those specified can affect the lifetime of tyres, wheel rotation, ground clearance, the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.
Fitting different tyres on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.
Always mark the direction of rotation on the tyres that will be stored when fitting winter or summer tyres. Store them in a cool, dry place and away from direct exposure to the sun's rays.
Winter or 4-seasons tyres can be identified by this symbol on their sidewalls.

AdBlue® (BlueHDi)

To respect the environment and ensure compliance with the Euro 6 standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of its Diesel engines, CITROËN has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with a system that combines SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a Diesel Particle Filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

SCR system

Using a liquid called AdBlue® that contains urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of the nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.
The AdBlue® is contained in **a special tank** holding about 17 litres.
Its capacity allows a driving range of approximately 3,000 miles (5,000 km) (**which may vary considerably** depending on your driving style and the vehicle). An alert system is automatically triggered when the remaining range reaches 1,500 miles (2,400 km), i.e. once the reserve level has been reached.
Several alerts are triggered successively during the remaining 1,500 miles (2,400 km) until the tank is empty and the vehicle is immobilised.

For more information on the **Warning and indicator lamps** and the associated alerts, or the **Indicators**, please refer to the corresponding sections.

Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a device required by law prevents the engine from being restarted.
If the SCR system is faulty, the level of emissions from the vehicle will no longer meet

the Euro 6 standard and the vehicle starts polluting the environment.
In the event of a confirmed SCR system malfunction, it is essential to visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible. After 685 miles (1,100 km), a device is automatically activated to prevent the engine from starting.
In both cases, a range indicator indicates the distance that can be travelled before the vehicle is immobilised.

Freezing of the AdBlue®
AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.
The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

Supply of AdBlue®

It is recommended that the AdBlue® be topped up as soon as the first alert is issued indicating that the reserve level has been reached.

For the correct operation of the SCR system:
– Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.
– Never transfer AdBlue® to another container as it would lose its purity.
– Never dilute AdBlue® with water.

You can obtain AdBlue® from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, as well as service stations equipped with AdBlue® pumps specially designed for passenger vehicles.

Never top up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above +25°C. Containers should be stored in a cool area and protected from direct sunlight.
Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.
If the fluid has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out at room temperature.

Never store AdBlue® containers in your vehicle.

Precautions for use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This fluid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (when kept in a cool place).
In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and running water. In the event of contact with the eyes, immediately rinse the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. Seek medical attention if you feel a persistent burning sensation or irritation.
If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water.
In certain conditions (high temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the fluid. Ammonia vapours have an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

Store AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container.

Procedure

Before starting the top-up procedure, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.
In wintry conditions, ensure that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. Otherwise the AdBlue® may be frozen and so cannot be poured into the tank. Park the vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.

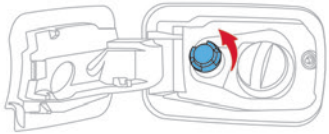
Never pour the AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.

If any AdBlue® is splashed, or if there are any spillages on the bodywork, rinse immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.
If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

Important: **in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of**

AdBlue, it is essential to wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, unlocking the vehicle, inserting the key into the ignition switch, or bringing the key for the "Keyless Entry and Start" system into the passenger compartment**. Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

► Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch to switch off the engine.
or
► With Keyless Entry and Start, press the "**START/STOP**" button to switch off the engine.



► With the vehicle unlocked and the fuel filler flap open, turn the blue cap of the AdBlue® tank anti-clockwise and remove it.
► With a container of AdBlue®: after checking the expiry date, read the instructions on the label carefully before pouring the contents of the container into the vehicle's AdBlue tank.
► With an AdBlue® pump: insert the nozzle and fill the tank until the nozzle automatically cuts out.

! In order not to overfill the AdBlue® tank:
– Add between 10 and 13 litres using AdBlue® containers.
– Stop after the nozzle's first automatic cut-out, if you are refilling at a service station.
The system only registers AdBlue® top-ups of 5 litres or more.

! If the AdBlue® tank is completely empty – which is confirmed by the message "**Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible**" – it is essential to add at least 5 litres.

After refilling

► Refit the blue cap to the tank filler and turn it clockwise, as far as it will go.
► Close the fuel filler flap.

Do not dispose of AdBlue® bottles or containers in the household waste. Place them in a container reserved for this purpose or take them back to where you purchased them.

Free-wheeling

In certain situations, it is necessary to put the vehicle into free-wheeling mode (e.g. towing, on a rolling road, automatic car wash (Wash mode), rail or sea transport).
The procedure varies according to the type of gearbox and parking brake.

! Do not leave the vehicle unattended while coasting.

i **Keyless Entry and Start**
You must not depress the brake pedal while switching the ignition on again, then switching it off. If you do, the engine will start, requiring you to restart the procedure.

With a manual gearbox and electric parking brake

To release them

► With the engine running and while depressing the brake pedal, move the gear selector to the neutral position.
► While depressing the brake pedal, switch off the engine.
► Release the brake pedal, then switch on the ignition.
► While depressing the brake pedal, press the control to release the parking brake.
► Release the brake pedal, then switch off the ignition.

Reverting to normal operation

► While depressing the brake pedal, restart the engine and apply the parking brake.

With an automatic gearbox and electric parking brake

To release them

► With the engine running and while depressing the brake pedal, set the gear selector to **N**.
► While depressing the brake pedal, switch off the engine.
► Release the brake pedal, then switch on the ignition again.
► While depressing the brake pedal, press the control lever to release the parking brake.
► Release the brake pedal, then switch off the ignition.

Reverting to normal operation

► While depressing the brake pedal, restart the engine and select mode **P**.

With drive selector and electric parking brake

Release procedure

► With the vehicle stationary and the engine running, depress the brake pedal and select mode **N**.
Within 5 seconds:
► Depress and hold the brake pedal, then observe this order: switch off the engine and move the push selector forwards or backwards.
► Release the brake pedal, then switch on the ignition.
► Place your foot on the brake and press the electric parking brake control to release it.
► Release the brake pedal, then switch off the ignition.

! A message is displayed on the instrument panel to confirm the unlocking of the wheels for 15 minutes.
When the vehicle is free-wheeling, the audio system cannot be updated (message displayed on the instrument panel).

After 15 minutes or reverting to normal operation

► While depressing the brake pedal, restart the engine and select mode **P**.

Advice on care and maintenance

General recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the vehicle.

Exterior

! Never use a high-pressure jet wash in the engine compartment - risk of damaging the electrical components!
Do not wash the vehicle in bright sunshine or extremely cold conditions.

i When washing the vehicle in an automatic roller-brush car wash, be sure to lock the doors and, depending on version, move the electronic key away.
When using a pressure washer, keep the jet nozzle at a minimum distance of 30 cm from the vehicle (particularly when cleaning areas containing chipped paint, sensors or seals).
Promptly clean up any stains containing chemicals liable to damage the vehicle's paintwork (including tree resin, bird droppings, insect secretions, pollen and tar).
Depending on the environment, clean the vehicle frequently to remove salty deposits (in coastal areas), soot (in industrial areas) and mud/salts (in wet or cold areas). These substances can be highly corrosive.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for advice on removing stubborn stains requiring special products (such as tar or insect removers).
Preferably, have paint touch-ups performed by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Interior

! When washing the vehicle, never use a water hose or high-pressure jet to clean the interior.
Liquids carried in cups or other open containers can spill, presenting a risk of damage to the instruments and controls and the controls located on the centre console. Be vigilant!
To clean instrument panels, touch screens or other displays, wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. Do not use products (e.g. alcohol, disinfectant) or soapy water directly on these surfaces - risk of damage!

Bodywork

High-gloss paint

! Do not use abrasive products, solvents, petrol or oil to clean the bodywork.
Never use an abrasive sponge to clean stubborn stains - risk of scratching the paintwork!
Do not apply polish in strong sunshine, or to plastic or rubber parts.

i Use a soft cloth and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
Gently wipe the bodywork with a clean microfibre cloth.
Apply polish with the vehicle clean and dry.

Comply with the instructions for use stated on the product.

Decals

(Depending on version)

! Do not use a high-pressure washer to clean the vehicle - risk of damaging or detaching the decals!

i Use a high-flow hose (temperature between 25°C and 40°C).
Place the jet of water perpendicular to the surface to be cleaned.
Rinse the vehicle with demineralised water.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

With Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel.
Before starting to prime the system, it is essential to put at least 5 litres of Diesel into the fuel tank.

> For more information on **Refuelling** and on **Misfuel prevention (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

For non-BlueHDi versions, the fuel system components are located in the engine compartment; this may be under a removable cover.

> For more information on the **Engine compartment**, in particular the location of these components under the bonnet, refer to the corresponding section.

With 1.6 BlueHDi (Euro 6.1)

► Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
► Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
► Repeat the operation 10 times.
► Operate the starter motor to start the engine.
If the engine does not start at the first attempt, do not keep trying, but restart the procedure.

With 1.5 BlueHDi (Euro 6.2/6.3)

► Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
► Wait around 1 minute and switch off the ignition.
► Operate the starter motor to start the engine.
If the engine does not start at the first attempt, do not keep trying, but restart the procedure.

Non-BlueHDi engines

► Open the bonnet and then, if necessary, unclip the cover to access the priming pump.

► Operate the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (resistance may be felt at the first press).
► Operate the starter motor to start the engine (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
► If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again, then the starter motor.
► Put the cover back in place and clip it in, then close the bonnet.

Tool kit

► For easier access, move the seat(s) forward.

Accessing the tools

Vehicle with electric motor

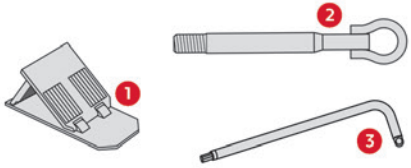
With temporary puncture repair kit
The tools are located in the passenger footwell.

With spare wheel
The tools are located under the right-hand front seat.
To access the tools:
– With non-adjustable front seat, lift the seat cushion by placing your hand between the cushion and the backrest.
– With adjustable front seat, move the seat forward as far as possible.
The jack is located in the passenger footwell.

Vehicle with Petrol or Diesel engine

With temporary puncture repair kit
The kit is located under the right-hand front seat.
With spare wheel
The jack is located under the right-hand front seat.
The tools are located under the left-hand front seat.

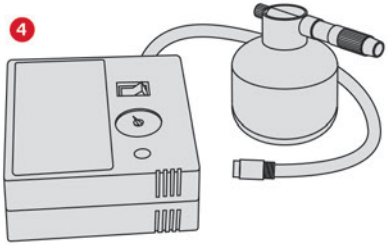
List of tools



1. Chock to immobilise the vehicle
2. Removable towing eye

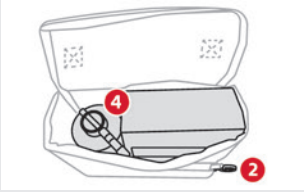
3. Torx key
   Allows the removal of the rear lamps in order to change a bulb.

With temporary puncture repair kit

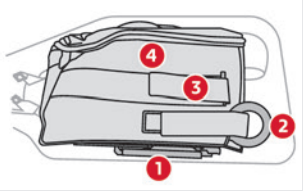


4. 12 V compressor with cartridge of sealant and speed limit sticker
   For temporary repair of a tyre and to adjust the tyre pressure.

Storing the tools (vehicle with electric motor)



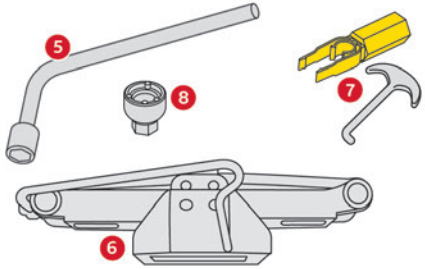
Store the 12 V compressor and sealant cartridge **4** inside the pouch as shown.



The space inside the passenger footwell is narrow. In order to be able to close the hatch, store the tools in their initial locations: chock **1** outside the bag, removable eye **2** on top of the bag with the buckle facing outwards, Torx key **3** on top of the bag, 12 V compressor with sealant cartridge **4** inside the bag.

For more information about the **Temporary puncture repair kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

With spare wheel



5. Wheelbrace.
   For removing the wheel bolts and raising/lowering the jack.
6. Jack.
   Used to raise the vehicle.
7. Wheel bolt cover/wheel trim removal tool (depending on equipment).
   If present on the vehicle, used to remove the wheel bolt covers on alloy wheels or the wheel trim on steel wheels.
8. Socket for "anti-theft" wheel bolts.
   Used to adapt the wheelbrace to the special "anti-theft" bolts.

For more information on the **Spare wheel**, please refer to the corresponding section.

! All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and may vary depending on equipment.
Do not use them for any other purposes.

i The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.
The jack does not require any maintenance.
The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC.

i Some parts of the jack such as the screws and hinges could cause injury: avoid touching them.
Carefully remove any traces of grease.

Temporary puncture repair kit

i Scan the QR Code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Made up of a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows you to carry out a **temporary repair** of the tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.
It is designed to repair most punctures located on the tyre tread.

i The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor to the 12 V power supply for long enough to repair a tyre after a puncture.

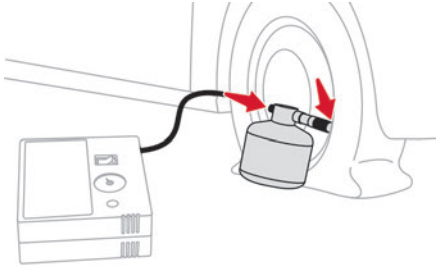
! Only the 12 V socket located **at the front** of the vehicle can be used to power the compressor.

i For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Repair procedure

! Do not remove any foreign body (e.g. nail, screw) which has penetrated the tyre.

► Park the vehicle without obstructing traffic and apply the parking brake.
► Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, high visibility jacket, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
► Switch the ignition off.
► Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean place.

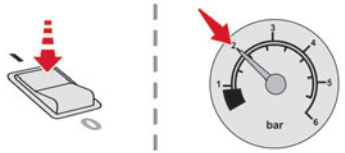


► Connect the pipe from the bottle of sealant to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.
► Connect the pipe from the compressor to the bottle of sealant.
► Check that the compressor switch is in position "**O**".
► Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
► Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.

► Affix the speed limit sticker.

! The speed limit sticker must be affixed inside the vehicle in the area close to the driver, to remind them that a wheel is in temporary use.

► Switch the ignition on.



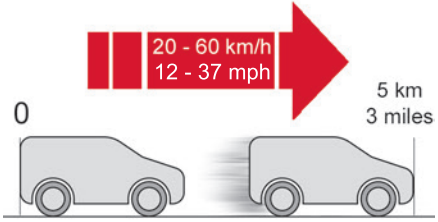
► Switch on the compressor by moving the switch to position "**I**" until the tyre pressure reaches 2 bar. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tyre; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

! If after approximately 7 minutes, the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

► Move the switch to position "**O**".
► Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.
► Remove the kit.
► Refit the cap on the valve.
► Remove and store the bottle of sealant.

! The sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.
Keep this product out of the reach of children.
The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle.

After use, do not discard the bottle into the environment; take it to a CITROËN dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



► Drive immediately for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometres) at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)) to plug the puncture.
► Stop to check the repair **and the tyre pressure** using the kit.

! With a tyre repaired using this type of kit, do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not drive more than 50 miles (80 km).
You must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the repair checked and the tyre changed.

Checking/adjusting tyre pressures

The compressor can be used, **without injecting sealant**, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.
► Remove the valve cap from the tyre and keep it in a clean place.
► Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
► Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
► Check that the compressor switch is in position "**O**".
► Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
► Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
► Switch the ignition on.
► Start the compressor by placing the switch at position "**I**" and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure label. To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.

! If after 7 minutes the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, the tyre is damaged; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

► Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch in position "**O**".
► Remove the kit and stow it.
► Refit the cap on the valve.

! Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.
For more information on **Tyre under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Spare wheel

i Scan the QR Code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

i For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

► Park the vehicle without obstructing traffic and apply the parking brake.
► Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, wearing high visibility jacket, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
► Switch the ignition off.

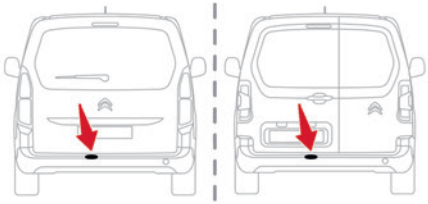
Accessing the spare wheel

► Access to the spare wheel is from the rear.

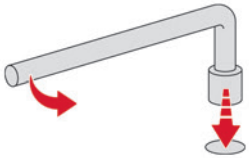
► If the vehicle is fitted with a towbar, raise the rear of the vehicle using the jack (must be at jacking point **B**) to allow sufficient space to remove the spare wheel.

Removing the spare wheel from the carrier

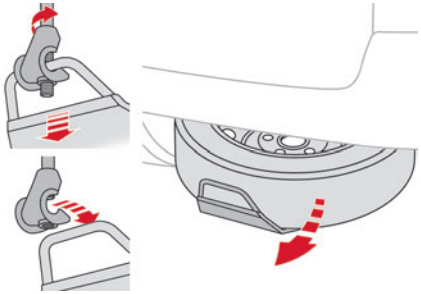
► Depending on version, open the tailgate or side-hinged doors.



► Access the carrier bolt, located on the rear door sill.

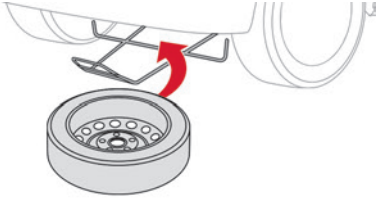


► Slacken the bolt using the wheelbrace until the carrier is low enough to allow the carrier hook to be disengaged.



► Release the carrier from the hook and place the spare wheel next to the wheel to be changed.

Putting the spare wheel back in the carrier



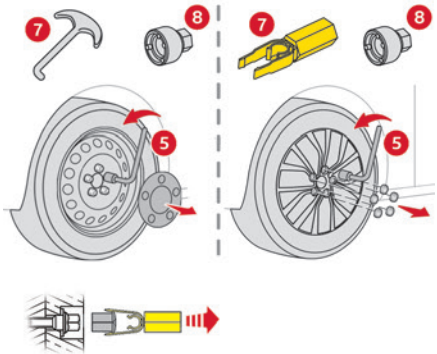
► Position the wheel facing the carrier.
► Progressively return the wheel to the carrier by pushing alternately at left and right until it is clear of the hook fixing area.
► Engage the carrier on the hook, then tighten the bolt using the wheelbrace handle until the bolt is tight.

Removing a wheel

! Parking the vehicle
Immobilise the vehicle where it does not obstruct traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.
With a manual gearbox, engage first gear to lock the wheels, apply the parking brake, unless it is set to automatic mode, and switch off the ignition.
With an automatic gearbox, select mode **P** to lock the wheels, apply the parking brake, unless it is set to automatic mode, and switch off the ignition.

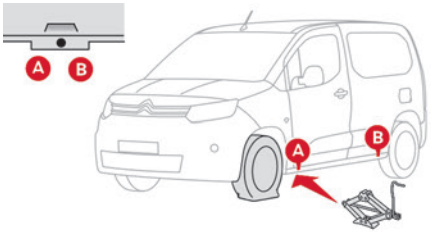
Check that the parking brake indicator lamps on the instrument panel are on fixed.
The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.
If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

i Wheel with wheel trim
When removing the wheel, first remove the wheel trim by pulling at the valve aperture using the wheelbrace.
When refitting the wheel, refit the wheel trim, starting by placing its aperture in line with the valve and then pushing it into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.

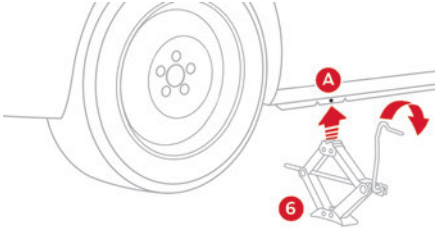


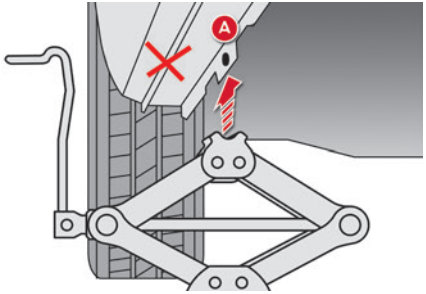
► With a steel wheel, remove the wheel trim using tool **7**.
► With an alloy wheel, remove the cap from each of the bolts using tool **7**.
► If the vehicle is so equipped, fit security bolt socket **8** to wheelbrace **5** to slacken the security bolt.
► **Slacken** (without removing) the other wheel bolts using just wheelbrace **5**.

i Wheel with wheel trim
When removing the wheel, first remove the wheel trim by pulling at the valve aperture using the wheelbrace.



► Place the foot of the jack on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the **A** or **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.

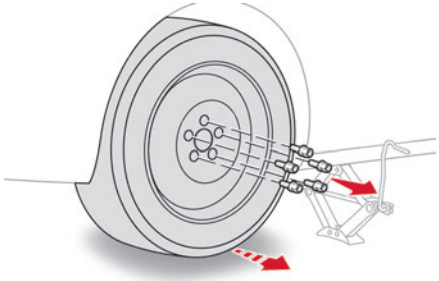




► Extend jack **6** until its head comes into contact with jacking point **A** or **B**, whichever is used; the contact surface **A** or **B** of the vehicle must be correctly engaged with the central part of the head of the jack.
► Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground, to then easily fit the spare (not punctured) wheel.

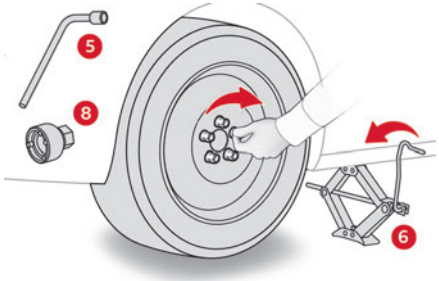
! Risk of injury!
Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or collapse.

Ensure that the jack is positioned strictly at one of the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, making sure that the vehicle's contact surface is correctly centred on the head of the jack. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or of the jack collapsing.

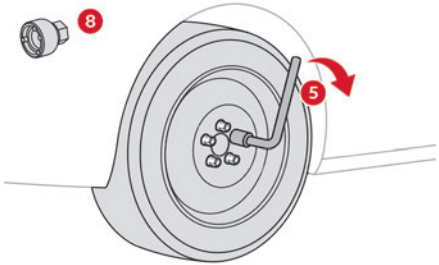


► Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
► Remove the wheel.

Fitting a wheel

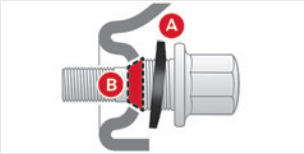


► Fit the wheel on the hub.
► Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.
► Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** equipped with a security socket **8**.
► Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.
► Lower the vehicle again fully.
► Fold jack **6** and remove it.



► If your vehicle is so equipped, tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** equipped with a security socket **8**.
► Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.
► Store the tools.

Fitting a steel spare wheel



If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, the washers **A** do not make contact with the steel spare wheel. The wheel is held in place by the conical contact surface **B** of each bolt.

After changing a wheel

Stow the punctured wheel in the carrier.

With a non-standard spare wheel

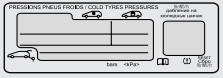
Deactivate certain driving aid functions (Active Safety Brake, Adaptive cruise control, etc.).

Do not exceed the maximum authorised speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) or the maximum distance of 50 miles (80 km).
Driving with more than one spare wheel of this type is prohibited.
The wheel trim from the replaced wheel must not be refitted.

Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Have the tightening of the spare wheel's bolts and its tyre pressure checked.
Have the punctured tyre examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

Wheel with wheel trim
When refitting the wheel, refit the wheel trim, starting by aligning the cutout with the valve and then pushing the trim into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.

Tyre inflation pressures are indicated on this label.
For more information on **Identification markings**, particularly this label, refer to the corresponding section.



Changing a bulb

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal, and will disappear after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:
– **Do not clean them with a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with detergent or solvent products.**
– Use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
– When using a high-pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the headlamps, lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

Changing a bulb must only be done with the ignition off and after the headlamp / lamp has been switched off for several minutes - risk of serious burns!
Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers; use a lint-free cloth.
It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the headlamp.

Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb of the same type and specification. To avoid lighting imbalance, replace the bulbs in pairs.

Opening the bonnet/Accessing the bulbs
Proceed with caution when the engine is hot - risk of burns!
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan - risk of strangulation!

Halogen bulbs (Hx)
To ensure good quality lighting, check that the bulb is correctly positioned in its housing.

After changing a bulb
To refit, carry out the operations in reverse order to removal.
Close the protective cover very carefully to guarantee the sealing of the lamps.

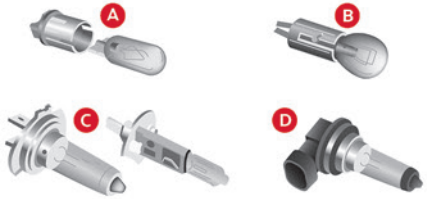
Light-emitting diode (LED) headlamps and lamps

Depending on version, the affected types of headlamps/lamps are:
– Daytime running lamps/sidelamps.

If you need to replace this type of bulb, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Types of bulb

Various types of bulb are fitted on the vehicle. To remove them:



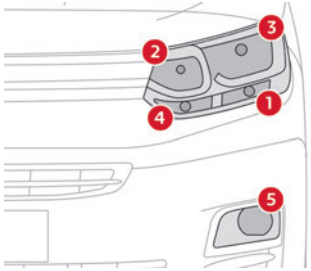
Type A All-glass bulb: pull gently as it is fitted by pressure.
Type B Bayonet bulb: press on the bulb then turn it anti-clockwise.
Type C Halogen bulb: release the retaining spring from its housing.
Type D Halogen bulb: turn the bulb anti-clockwise.

When each operation has been completed, check the operation of the lighting.

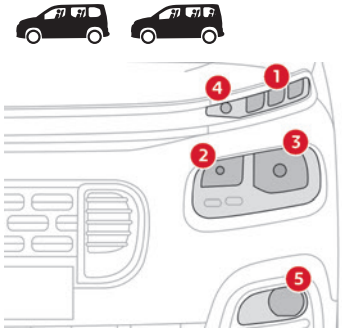
Front lamps

For more information on **Changing a bulb** and, in particular, the types of bulb, refer to the corresponding section.

Model A



Model B

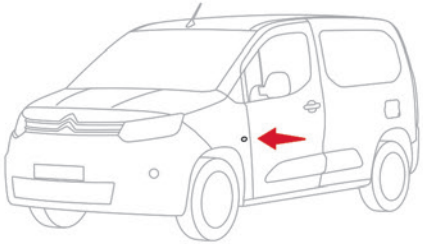


1. Sidelamps/Daytime running lamps
   Type A, W21/5W or LED (depending on version)
2. Main beam headlamps
   Type C, H1

3. Dipped beam headlamps
   Type C, H7
4. Direction indicator
   Type B, PY21W
5. Foglamp
   Type D, H11

Direction indicator side repeater

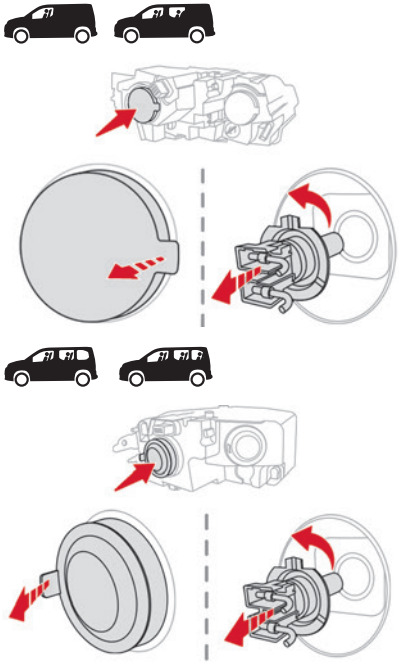
Type A, WY5W-5W (amber)



– Push the repeater towards the rear and release it.
– When refitting, engage the repeater towards the front and then slide it backwards.
Amber coloured bulbs (direction indicators and side repeaters) must be replaced with bulbs of identical specification and colour.

Dipped beam headlamps

Type C, H7



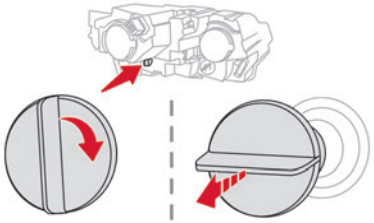
► Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
► Turn the unit in relation to the support.
► Pull the bulb connector.
► Remove the bulb and replace it.

> Take care to reposition the protective cover while keeping the tab accessible.

Sidelamps/Daytime running lamps

Type A, W21/5W

Model A



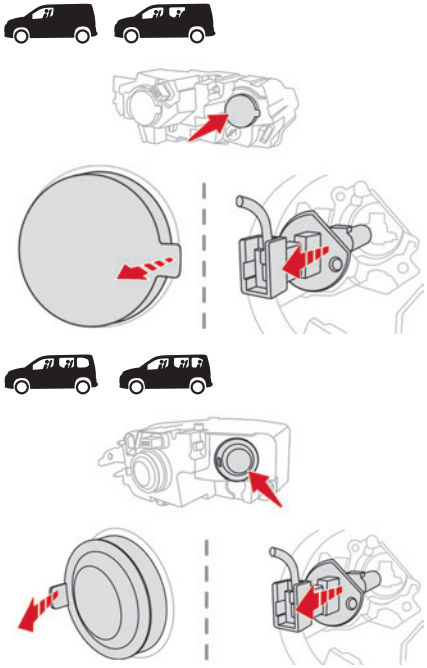
► Turn the connector a quarter turn clockwise.
► Pull the bulb connector.
► Remove the bulb and replace it.

Model B

> **Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)**
> If you need to replace this type of bulb, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Main beam headlamps

Type C, H1



► Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
► Unclip the unit in relation to the support.
► Pull the bulb connector.
► Remove the bulb and replace it.

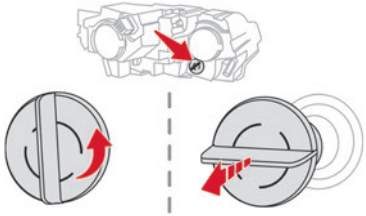
ℹ Take care to reposition the protective cover while keeping the tab accessible.

Direction indicators

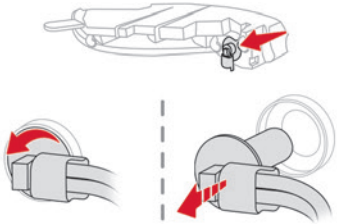
Type B, PY21W

ℹ Rapid flashing of a direction indicator lamp (left or right) indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.

Model A



Model B

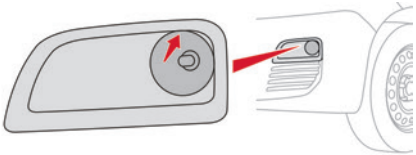


► Turn the connector a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
► Pull the unit in relation to the support.
► Remove the bulb and replace it.

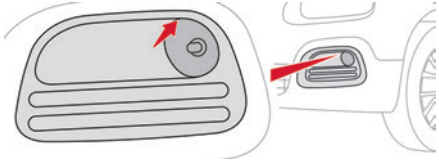
Front foglamps

Type D, H11

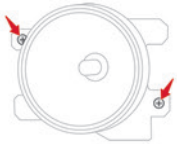
Model A



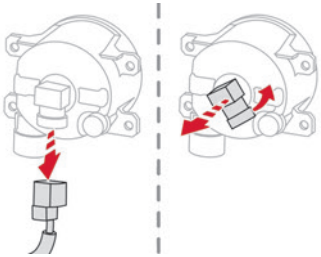
Model B



► Insert a flat screwdriver between the lamp and the cover.
► Pull and lever to unclip the cover.



► Remove the two fastening screws of the module.
► Remove the module from its housing.



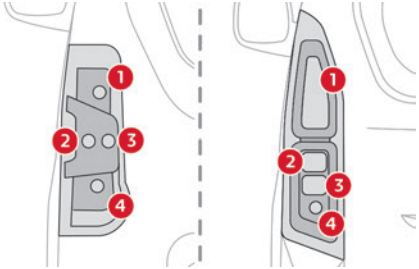
► Press the locking clip and disconnect the connector.
► Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
► Remove the bulb holder.
► Replace the faulty bulb.

> ℹ To replace these bulbs, it is possible to contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

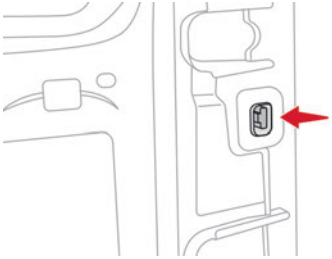
Rear lamps

For more information on **Changing a bulb** and, in particular, the types of bulb, refer to the corresponding section.

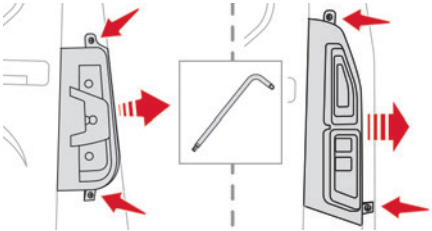
With side-hinged doors/tailgate



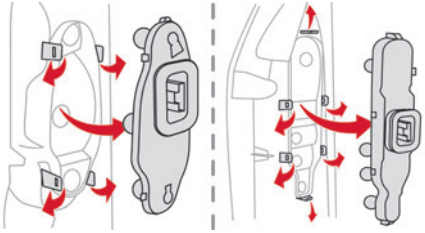
1. Brake lamps/sidelamps.
   Type B, P21/5W
2. Direction indicators.
   Type B, PY21W (amber)
3. Reversing lamps.
   Type B, P21W
4. Foglamps.
   Type B, P21W



► From the inside, disconnect the electrical connector at the rear of the lamps.



► Remove the two fixing bolts using the Torx key provided in your vehicle.
For more information on the **Tool kit**, please refer to the corresponding section.
► From the outside, pull the whole lamp unit towards you (with **side-hinged doors**) or towards the centre of the vehicle (with **tailgate**).



► Open the tabs, then pull out the lamp holder.
► Remove the faulty bulb by pressing lightly on it while turning it a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
► Replace the bulb.

> ℹ Take care to reposition the tabs and the wiring correctly to avoid trapping the wire.

After changing a rear direction indicator bulb, the reinitialisation time is approximately 2 minutes or more.

Number plate lamps

Type A, W5W - 5W

With side-hinged doors

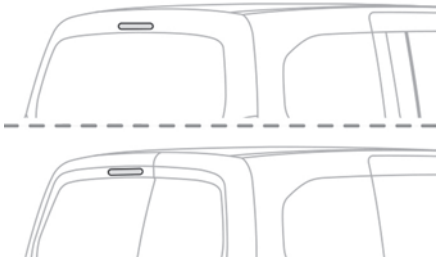
► Unclip the interior trim.
► Disconnect the connector by moving aside its tab.
► Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
► Change the bulb.
► Put the bulb holder back in place and reconnect the connector.
► Put the trim back in place.

With tailgate

► Move aside the plastic lens using a screwdriver.
► Change the bulb.
► Reposition the plastic lens and press it in.

Third brake lamp

Type A, W16W - 16W



– Unscrew the two nuts.
– Push the rods.
– If necessary, disconnect the connector to remove the lamp.
– Replace the bulb.

Fuses

Changing a fuse
All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop The replacement of a fuse by a third party could cause a serious malfunction of the vehicle.

Installing electrical accessories
The vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before fitting other electrical equipment or accessories to your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

CITROËN accepts no responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing the vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied or not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in accordance with its recommendations, in particular when the combined power consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

12 V battery / Accessory battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or for charging a discharged battery.

Lead-acid starter batteries

These batteries contain harmful substances (sulphuric acid and lead). They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must never under any

circumstances be discarded with household waste.
Dispose of used batteries at a designated collection point.

! Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, to avoid any risk of explosion or fire.
Wash your hands afterwards.

Electric motor

i **Flat accessory battery**
It is no longer possible to start the motor or recharge the traction battery.

! **Precautions before working on the accessory battery**
Select mode **P**, switch off the ignition, check that the instrument panel is off and that the vehicle is not being charged.

! **Jump-starting another vehicle**
Do not use the accessory battery to jump-start another vehicle or to charge another vehicle's battery.

Symbols

No sparks or naked flames, no smoking.

Always protect your eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness and injury.

Keep the vehicle's battery out of the reach of children.

The vehicle's battery contains sulphuric acid which can make you go blind or cause severe burns.

For more information, refer to the handbook.

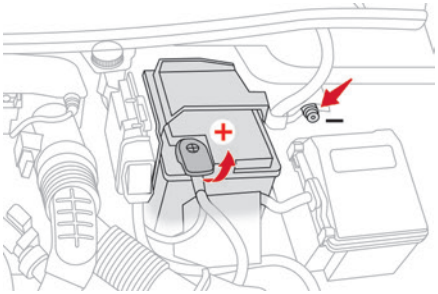
Explosive gases can be present close to the battery.

Access to the battery

The battery is located under the bonnet.

► Open the bonnet using the interior release lever, then the exterior safety catch.

► Secure the bonnet stay.



The battery (-) terminal is not accessible.

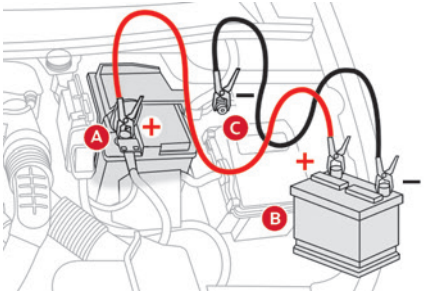
There is a remote earth point near the battery.

i For more information on the **Bonnet** and the **Engine**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Starting using another battery

If the vehicle's battery is flat, the engine can be started using a backup battery (either external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or using a battery booster.

! Never start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
Switch off all electricity-consuming equipment on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
Make sure that the jump leads are well away from the engine’s moving parts (fan, belt, etc.).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



► Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow), then to the (+) terminal of the backup battery **B** or of the booster.
► Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of the backup battery **B** or of the booster (or to an earth point on the assisting vehicle).
► Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C**.
► Start the engine on the assisting vehicle and leave it running for a few minutes.
► Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.
If the engine does not start immediately, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.
► Wait for it to return to idle.
► Disconnect the jump leads **in reverse order**.
► Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

! Driving immediately without having reached a sufficient level of charge may affect some of the vehicle's functions (e.g. Stop & Start).

! To disconnect, proceed in reverse order.

! **Automatic gearbox**
Never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

i Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

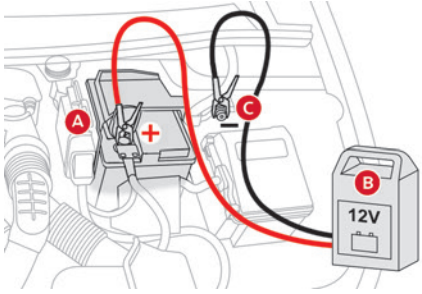
For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.
In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the battery:
– When using the vehicle mainly for short journeys.
– If the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

! Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
Never reverse polarities.

i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

► Switch the ignition off.
► Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).

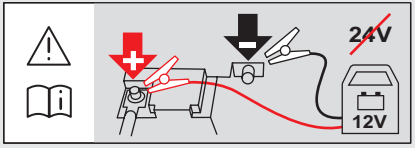


► Switch off charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
► Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
► Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
► Connect the cables of charger **B** as follows:

- the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **A**,
- the negative (-) black cable to earth point **C** on the vehicle.

► At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.

! If this label is present, use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components.



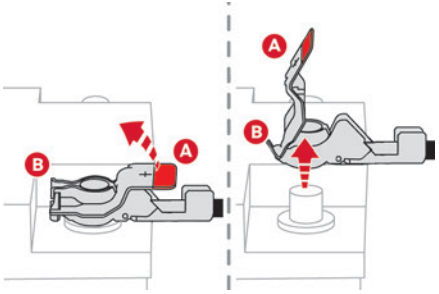
! **Frozen battery**
Never try to charge a frozen battery - risk of explosion!
If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or by a qualified workshop, who will verify that the internal components have not been damaged and that the case has not cracked, which could lead to a risk of leakage of toxic and corrosive acid.

Disconnecting/reconnecting the battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, we recommend disconnecting the battery if the vehicle is to be unused for an extended period.
Before disconnecting the battery:
► Close all openings (doors, tailgate, windows, roof).
► Switch off all electricity-consuming devices (audio system, wipers, lamps, etc.).
► Switch off the ignition and wait for 4 minutes.
After accessing the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

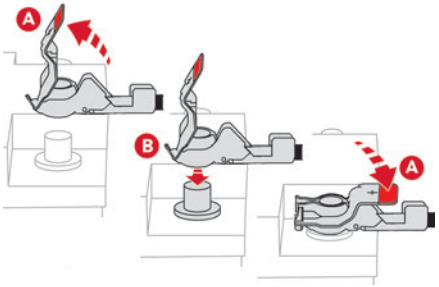
Quick-release terminal clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



► Depending on equipment, lift the plastic cover on the **(+)** terminal.
► Raise lever **A** fully to release clamp **B**.
► Remove clamp **B** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



► Raise lever **A** fully.
► Refit open clamp **B** on the **(+)** terminal.
► Push clamp **B** fully down.
► Lower lever **A** to lock clamp **B**.
► Depending on equipment, lower the plastic cover on the **(+)** terminal.

! Do not force the lever when pressing on it, as if the clamp is not positioned correctly, locking will then not be possible. Start the procedure again.

Following reconnection

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, to enable the electronic systems to initialise.
If minor problems nevertheless persist following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the relevant section, reinitialise certain equipment:
– Remote control key or electronic key (depending on version).
– Electric windows.
– Date and time.
– Preset radio stations.

The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period with the vehicle immobilised, the duration of which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Towing

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using the towing eye.

General recommendations
Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
Check that the towing vehicle is heavier than the towed vehicle.
The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towbar; ropes and straps are prohibited.
The towing vehicle must move off gently.
When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

A professional recovery service must be called in the following cases:
– broken down on a motorway or main road;
– not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake;
– not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic gearbox, with the engine running;
– towing with only two wheels on the ground;
– four-wheel drive vehicle;
– no approved towbar available.

Before towing the vehicle, it is essential to put the vehicle in free-wheeling mode.
For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

Electric motor
An electric vehicle cannot under any circumstances be used to tow another vehicle.
However, it may be used, for example, to exit a rut.

	Towing constraints			
Type of vehicle (engine/gearbox)	**Front wheels on the ground**	**Rear wheels on the ground**	**Flatbed**	**4 wheels on the ground with towbar**
Internal combustion/Manual	✓	✓	✓	✓

	Towing constraints			
Type of vehicle (engine/gearbox)	**Front wheels on the ground**	**Rear wheels on the ground**	**Flatbed**	**4 wheels on the ground with towbar**
Internal combustion/Automatic	✗	✓	✓	✗
Electric	✗	✓	✓	✗

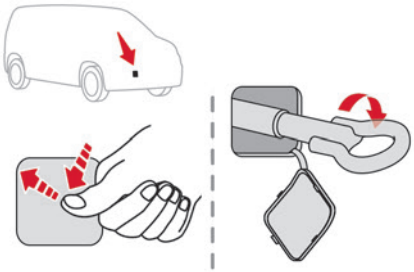
i In case of battery or electric parking brake failure, it is essential to call a professional using flatbed recovery vehicles (excluding manual gearbox).

Accessing the towing eye

i For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

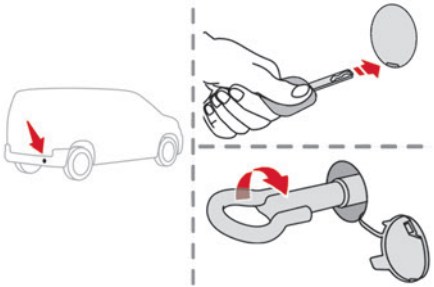
! With a manual gearbox, move the gear lever into neutral.
With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector into position **N**.
Failure to adhere to this instruction may lead to damage to braking system components and the lack of braking assistance on restarting the engine.

Towing your vehicle



► In the front bumper, slide a finger from the centre of the cover plate to the upper corner (as shown above) to unclip it.
► Screw the towing eye in fully.
► Install the towbar.
► Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.
► Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

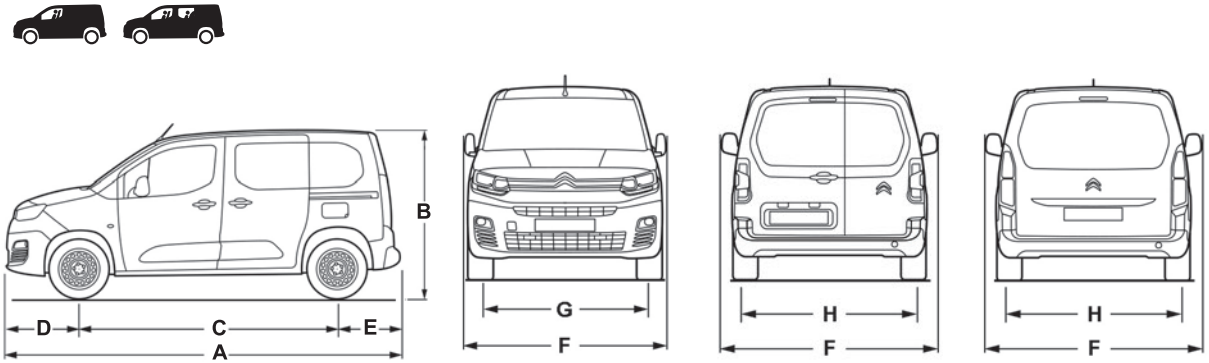
Towing another vehicle



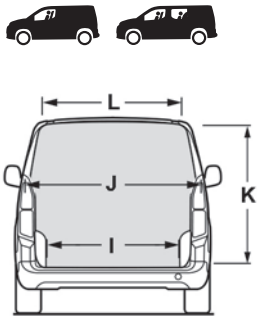
► On the rear bumper, place the key in the notch located under the flap.
► Turn the key and open the flap.
► Screw the towing eye in fully.
► Install the towbar.
► Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the vehicle being towed.
► Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

Dimensions (mm)

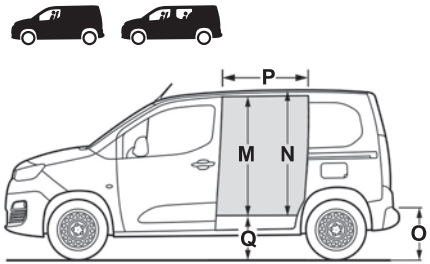
These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.
The vehicle is available in two lengths (M and XL).
Actual values may vary, depending on wheel diameters, loads, engine, etc.
The height may vary, depending on wheel diameters.



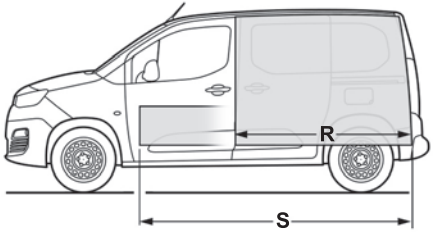
			Vehicle length	
			M (L1)	**XL (L2)**
A	Overall length		4,403	4,753
B	Overall height	Standard version	1,796 to 1,825	1,812 to 1,820
		Worksite version	1,840 to 1,860	1,849 to 1,860
C	Wheelbase		2,785	2,975
D	Front overhang		892	
E	Rear overhang		726	886
F	Width inc. mirrors	Folded	1,921	
		Unfolded	2,107	
G	Front track width		1,553/1,563	1,553
H	Rear track width		1,569/1,577	1,549/1,568



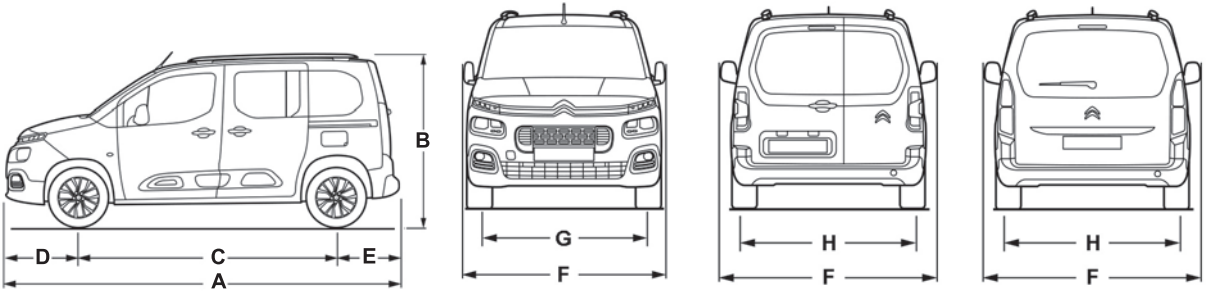
			Vehicle length	
			M (L1)	XL (L2)
I	Interior width between wheel arches		1,229	
J	Maximum interior width	Without sliding side door	1,733	
		With 1 sliding side door	1,630	
		With 2 sliding side doors	1,527	
K	Clear opening height	With side-hinged doors	1,137	
		With tailgate	1,197	
L	Clear opening width		1 242	



			Vehicle length	
			M (L1)	XL (L2)
M	Clear opening height		1,072	
N	Interior load height (varies depending on the angle of the floor and the curve of the roof)		1,200 to 1,270	
O	Loading sill height	Standard version	548 to 588	X
		Standard version with increased payload	568 to 578	561 to 565
		Worksite version	602 to 610	605 to 610
P	Clear opening width	Max.	675	
		Min.	641	
Q	Loading sill height	Standard version	534 to 558	
		Standard version with increased payload	551 to 558	543 to 552
		Worksite version	574 to 581	575 to 587



			Vehicle length	
			M (L1)	**XL (L2)**
R	Interior floor length	With partition	1,817	2,167
		With ladder	1,790	2,140
S	Maximum loading length (With protective cover in place)		3,090	3 440



			Vehicle length	
			M (L1)	XL (L2)
A	Overall length		4,403	4,753
B	Overall height	Without roof bars	1,800 to 1,807	1,812 to 1,818
		With roof bars	1,837 to 1,844	1,843 to 1,849
C	Wheelbase		2,785	2,975
D	Front overhang		892	
E	Rear overhang		726	886
F	Width inc. mirrors	Folded	1,921	
		Unfolded	2,107	
G	Front track width		1,553	
H	Rear track width		1,567	

Engine technical data and towed loads

Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.
Only the values available at the time of publication are presented in the tables.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain missing values.

The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to the vehicle are indicated on the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.
These values are also indicated on the manufacturer's plate or label.
For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.
The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, reduce the towed weight.

Towing even with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect its road holding.
Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.
When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine is allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

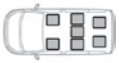
Engines and towed loads - PETROL

Vehicles fitted with the **VTi 110 BVM5** engine are not suitable for towing.

Engines and towed loads - PETROL EURO 6.3

Engine			PureTech 110 S&S BVM6		PureTech 130 S&S EAT8	
Gearbox			Manual 6-speed		Automatic 8-speed	
Code			EB2ADT MB6 STTD		EB2ADTS ATN8 STTD	
Length			M (L1)	XL (L2)	M (L1)	XL (L2)
Model Code	5 seats		ERHNP2-A	ERHNP2-C	ERHNS3-A	ERHNS3-C
	7 seats		ERHNP2-B	ERHNP2-D	ERHNS3-B	ERHNS3-D
Cubic capacity (cc)			1,199		1,199	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)			81		96	
Fuel			Unleaded		Unleaded	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	5 seats		1,150	1,100	1,200	1,150
	7 seats		1,000	900/950	1,050	1,000/950
Unbraked trailer (kg)	5 seats		720/730	750	740/750	750
	7 seats		750	750	750	750
Maximum authorised nose/towball weight (kg)	5 seats		74	74	74	74
	7 seats		50/70	50	70/50	50

Engines and towed loads - DIESEL

Engine			**HDi 92 S&S BVM5**	
Gearbox			**Manual 5-speed**	
Code			DV6DR	
Length			M (L1)	XL (L2)
Model Code	**5 seats**		EC___A-A	EC___A-C
	7 seats		EC___A-B	EC___A-D
Cubic capacity (cc)			1,560	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)			68	
Fuel			Diesel	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	**5 seats**		1,100	1,050
	7 seats		950	900
Unbraked trailer (kg)	**5 seats**		720	750
	7 seats		750	750
Maximum authorised nose/towball weight (kg)	**5 seats**		74	74
	7 seats		70 (Citroën)	50

Engines and towed loads - DIESEL EURO 6.1

Engine			**BlueHDi 100 BVM5**	
Gearbox			**Manual 5-speed**	
Code			DV6FD BE	
Length			M (L1)	XL (L2)
Model Code	**5 seats**		ECBHYB-A	ECBHYB-C
	7 seats		ECBHYB-B	ECBHYB-D
Cubic capacity (cc)			1,560	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)			73	
Fuel			Diesel	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	**5 seats**		1,100	1,050
	7 seats		950	900
Unbraked trailer (kg)	**5 seats**		730	750
	7 seats		750	
Maximum authorised nose/towball weight (kg)	**5 seats**		74	74
	7 seats		70 (Citroën)	50

Engines and towed loads - DIESEL EURO 6.2

Engine	BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM5	BlueHDi 100 BVM5	BlueHDi 130 S&S EAT8
Gearbox	**Manual 5-speed**	**Manual 5-speed**	**Automatic 8-speed**
Code	DV5RD STTd BVM5	DV5RD BVM5	DV5RC STTd ATN8
Model Code	EFYHYC-L	EFYHYJ-L	EFYHZR-L
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,499	1,499	1,499
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	75	75	96
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	1,050	1,050	1,050
Unbraked trailer (kg)	750	750	750
Maximum authorised nose/ towball weight (kg)	74	74	74

Engine			BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM5		BlueHDi 130 S&S EAT8	
Gearbox			Manual 5-speed		Automatic 8-speed	
Code			DV5RD BE STTD - TBC		DV5RC STTd ATN8	
Length			M (L1)	XL (L2)	M (L1)	XL (L2)
Model Code	5 seats		ECYHYC-A	ECYHYC-C	ECYHZR-A	ECYHZR-C
	7 seats		ECYHYC-B	ECYHYC-D	ECYHZR-B	ECYHZR-D
Cubic capacity (cc)			1,499		1,499	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)			75		96	
Fuel			Diesel		Diesel	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	5 seats		1,300	1,250	1,300	1,225/1,250
	7 seats		1,150	1,050/1,100	1,100/1,150	1,050/1,100
Unbraked trailer (kg)	5 seats		740/750	750	750	750
	7 seats		750	750	750	750
Maximum authorised nose/ towball weight (kg)	5 seats		74	74	52	74
	7 seats		60 (Citroën)	50/60 (Citroën)	50	50

Engines and towed loads - DIESEL EURO 6.3

Engine	BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM6	BlueHDi 100 BVM6	BlueHDi 130 S&S BVM6	BlueHDi 130 BVM6	BlueHDi 130 S&S EAT8
Gearbox	**Manual 6-speed**	**Manual 6-speed**	**Manual 6-speed**	**Manual 6-speed**	**Automatic 8-speed**
Code	DV5RCf MB6 STTD	DV5RCf MB6	DV5RC ML6C STTD	DV5RC ML6C	DV5RC ATN8 STTD
Model Code	EFYHT2-L	EFYHT2-L	EFYHZ2-L	EFYHZ2-L	EFYHZ3-L
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,499	1,499	1,499	1,499	1,499
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	75	75	96	96	96
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	1,250	1,250	1,250	1,250	
Unbraked trailer (kg)	750	750	750	750	
Maximum authorised nose/towball weight (kg)	74	74	74	74	

Engine			BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM6		BlueHDi 130 S&S BVM6		BlueHDi 130 S&S EAT8	
Gearbox			**Manual 6-speed**		**Manual 6-speed**		**Automatic 8-speed**	
Code			DV5RCf MB6 STTD		DV5RC ML6C STTD		DV5RC ATN8 STTD	
Length			M (L1)	XL (L2)	M (L1)	XL (L2)	M (L1)	XL (L2)
Model Code	**5 seats**		ECYHT2-A	ECYHT2-C	ECYHZ2-A	ECYHZ2-C	ECYHZ3-A	ECYHZ3-C
	7 seats		ECYHT2-B	ECYHT2-D	ECYHZ2-B	ECYHZ2-D	ECYHZ3-B	ECYHZ3-D
Cubic capacity (cc)			1,499		1,499		1,499	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)			74		96		96	
Fuel			Diesel		Diesel		Diesel	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	**5 seats**		1,300	1,250	1,500	1,450		
	7 seats		1,150	1,050/1,100	1,350	1,250		
Unbraked trailer (kg)	**5 seats**		740/750	750	750	750		
	7 seats		750	750	750	750		
Maximum authorised nose/towball weight (kg)	**5 seats**		74	74	74	74		
	7 seats		60 (Citroën)	50/60 (Citroën)	55/60	50		

Motor and towed loads - Electric

Electric motor

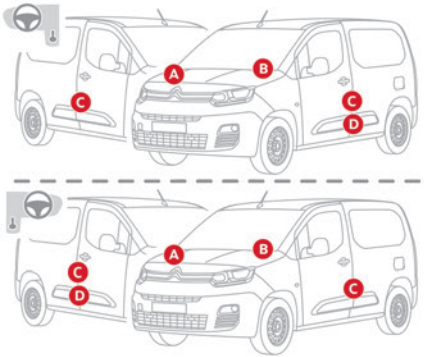
Electric motor	
Technology	Synchronous with permanent magnets
Max. power : EC standard (kW)/(hp)	100
Traction battery	
Technology	Lithium-Ion
Battery pack	18 modules
Installed capacity (kWh)	50
Domestic charging	**Mode 2**
Alternating current (AC) voltage Rating (A)	230 8 or 16
Accelerated charging	**Mode 3**
Alternating current (AC) voltage Rating (A)	230 (single-phase or three-phase) 16 or 32
Superfast charging	**Mode 4**
Direct current (DC) voltage	400

Towed loads

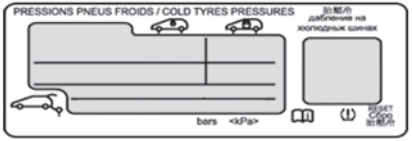
Model codes:	ZKX
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	750
Unbraked trailer (kg)	750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	50

Identification markings

Various visible markings for vehicle identification and vehicle search.



A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), under the bonnet.
Stamped on the chassis, near the right-hand front wheel arch.
B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), on the dashboard.
Printed on an adhesive label visible through the windscreen.
C. Manufacturer's label.
Affixed to the centre pillar, left-hand side or right-hand side.
Bears the following information:
– Manufacturer’s name.
– European whole vehicle type approval number.
– Vehicle Identification number (VIN).
– Gross vehicle weight (GVW).
– Gross train weight (GTW).
– Maximum weight on the front axle.
– Maximum weight on the rear axle.
D. Tyres/paint code label.



Affixed to the driver's door.
Bears the following information about the tyres:
– Tyre pressures, unladen and laden.
– Tyre specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices.
– Spare tyre inflation pressure.
Also indicates the paint colour code.

> i The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting tyre pressure (on cold tyres). In the event of a change in the type of tyres, contact a CITROËN dealer for the tyre fits approved for the vehicle.

Touch screen BLUETOOTH audio system

Multimedia audio system - Bluetooth® telephone

The functions and settings described vary according to the vehicle version and configuration.

For safety reasons and because they require sustained attention by the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:
– Pairing the smartphone with the system in Bluetooth mode.
– Using the smartphone.
– Changing the system settings and configuration.

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in the vehicle.
The **Energy Economy Mode** message is displayed when the system is about to enter the corresponding mode.

First steps

With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.
Increase or decrease the volume using the thumbwheel on the left-hand side.
To access the menus, press this button on the touch screen.
Press the back arrow to go back a level.

To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper bar of the touch screen:
– Air conditioning information (depending on version).
– Bluetooth connection.
– Indication of location data sharing.
Selection of the audio source:
– FM/AM/DAB radio stations (depending on equipment).
– Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
– USB memory stick.
– Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes.
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls - Type 1

Radio:
Select the previous/next preset radio station.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous/next track.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

Radio:

Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.
Short press: change audio source (radio; USB; AUX if equipment connected; CD; streaming).
Long press: display the call log.

Short press during an incoming call: accept the call.
Short press during a call in progress: end the call.
Confirm a selection.
Increase volume.
Decrease volume.
Mute/restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

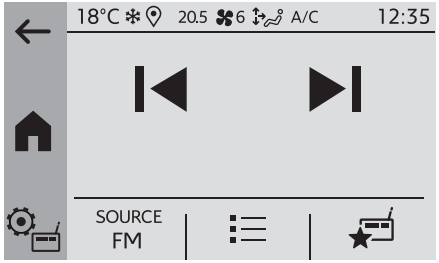
Steering mounted controls - Type 2

Voice commands:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).

Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.
Increase volume.
Decrease volume.
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.
SRC Change the multimedia source.
Short press: display the calls log.
Short press during an incoming call: accept the call.
Long press during an incoming call: reject the call.
Short press during a call in progress: end the call.
Radio (rotate): previous/next preset station.
Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.
LIST **Radio**: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.

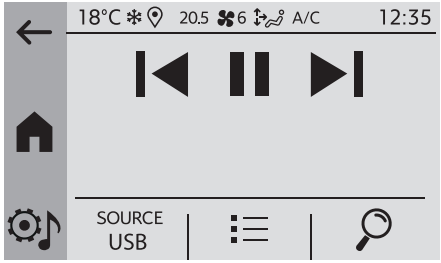
Menus

Radio



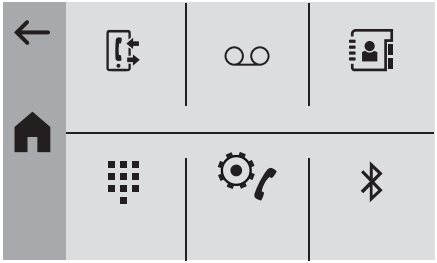
Select a radio station.

Media



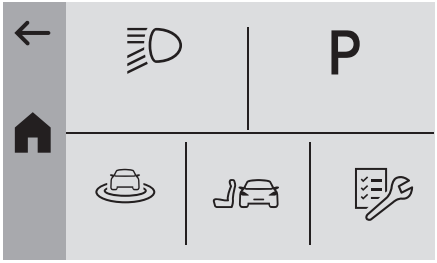
Select an audio source.

Telephone



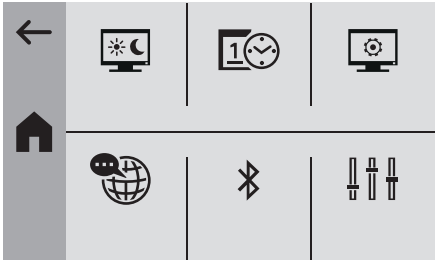
Connect a mobile phone via Bluetooth®.

Driving



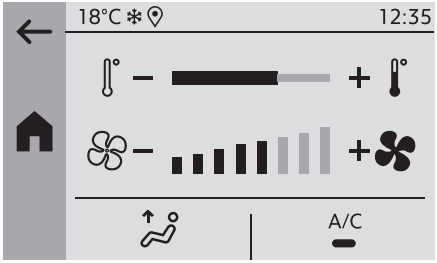
Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions (depending on equipment/version).

Settings



Adjust the sound settings (balance, ambience, etc.), the display (language, units, date, time, etc.) or configure the system (privacy).

Air conditioning/Heating



Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

Manage various temperature and air flow settings.

Radio

Choose the band

Press the "**Radio**" menu.

Press the "**SOURCE**" button.

Choose the band: **FM**, **AM** or **DAB**, depending on equipment.

Selecting a station

Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

MHz KHz Press on the displayed frequency.

Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.

Or

Press this button to display the list of stations received and available on the waveband.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This behaviour is normal in propagation of radio waves and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.

Press the "**Presets**" button.

Make a long press on an empty line to preset the station. An audible signal confirms the presetting of the station.
It is possible to preset up to 16 stations.

> To replace a preset station by the currently playing station, make a long press on the preset station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies.

> In certain conditions, tracking may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Press the "**Radio Settings**" button.

Activate/Deactivate "**RDS options**".

Playing TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages.

To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Press the "**Radio Settings**" button.

Activate/Deactivate "**Traffic announcement (TA)**".

Audio settings

Press the "**Radio Settings**" button.

In the list, select "**Audio Settings**".
Activate/deactivate and configure the available options (sound balance, ambiances, etc.).

> The sound balance/distribution is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to where the passengers are sitting in the vehicle.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Choosing the DAB radio

Terrestrial digital radio (DAB) provides higher quality reception.
The different "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.

Press the "**Radio**" menu.

Press the "**SOURCE**" button.
In the list of available sources, choose "**DAB Radio**".

Activating FM-DAB Tracking

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).

Press the "**Radio Settings**" button.

Activate "**DAB-FM**".

> If "FM-DAB tracking" is activated, there may be a difference of a few seconds

when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume. Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM", or if the "FM-DAB tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

Selecting the source

Press the "**Media**" menu.

Press the "**SOURCE**" button.
Select the source (USB, Bluetooth or AUX, depending on equipment).

USB port

Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory); this operation can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Playlists are updated whenever a USB memory stick is connected or the contents of a particular USB memory stick are changed. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary (AUX) jack socket

Depending on equipment

Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).
This source is only available if "**Aux Amplification**" has been selected in the audio settings.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system.
Controls are managed via the portable device.

Bluetooth®streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.
The Bluetooth profile must be activated, first adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of the system.
If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.
Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audio books/podcasts). It is also possible to use a classification structured in the form of a library.
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

Media settings

Press the "**Media Settings**" button.

Activate/deactivate track playback options and access the audio settings.

The audio settings are the same as the audio settings for the radio. For more information on the "**Audio settings**", refer to the corresponding section.

Information and advice

The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via the USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Devices are managed using the audio system controls.
Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, if compatible.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".mp3", ".mp4", ".m4a", ".flac", ".ogg" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps (300 Kbps maximum for ".flac" files).
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
All ".wma" files must be standard WMA 9 files.
The supported sampling rates are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.
To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. “ ? . ; ù).

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT or FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

We recommend using the original USB cable for the portable device.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

Up to 10 phones can be paired to the system.
Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone beforehand and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).
To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check for services availability in the phone's manual and with the operator.

The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, DID, A2DP, AVRCP, SPP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Procedure from the telephone

Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.
In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press the **Home** button to access the menus.
Select the "**Telephone**" menu.
Press "**Manage connections**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.
Select the name of the telephone in the list.
The system offers to connect the telephone with two profiles:
– as "**Telephone**": hands-free kit, telephone only.
– as "**Streaming**": wireless playing of audio files on the telephone.

The system cannot be connected to multiple telephones with the same profile. No more than 2 phones can be connected simultaneously (**1 per profile**).

The Bluetooth profiles chosen on the phone have priority over the profiles selected on the system.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function on the telephone.

Depending on the type of telephone, the option is given to accept or not accept the transfer of contacts and the call log.

Automatic reconnection

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).

Managing paired telephones

To connect or disconnect a paired telephone:

Select the "**Telephone**" menu.

Press "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired devices.

Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it.
Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

Press the "**Bluetooth**" button.

Press "**Manage connections**".
In the displayed window select "**Delete**".
The list of paired devices is displayed.
Press on the name of the telephone to delete.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

To accept the call:

Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button.

To reject the call:

Make a long press

on the steering mounted **TEL** button.

Or

Press "**End call**" on the touch screen.

Making a call

Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Parking the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

Press "**Telephone**".

Press the "**Keypad**" button.

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

Press "**OK**" to start the call.

Calling a contact

Press the "**Telephone**" menu.

Or make a long press

on the steering mounted **TEL** button.

Press "**Contacts**".
Select the desired contact from the list offered.

Calling a recently used number

Press "**Telephone**".

Press "**Calls**".
Or

Make a long press

on the steering mounted **TEL** button.

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

A call in progress remains active in the vehicle for 10 minutes after switching off the ignition. After that, the system switches off and the call automatically redirects to the telephone.

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Settings

Adjusting the brightness

Press "**Settings**".

Select "**Display**".

Press the buttons to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (depending on version).

Modifying system settings

Press "**Settings**".

Press "**System**".

Press "**Privacy**" to access the privacy settings.

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Press "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

Press "**System Info**" to check the system version.

Privacy settings

Three data privacy options are available:

"**No data sharing (data, vehicle position)**"

"**Only data sharing**"

"**Data and vehicle position sharing**"

When data and vehicle position sharing are enabled, this symbol is displayed in the upper bar of the touch screen.

Selecting the language

Press "**Settings**".

Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date and time

Press "**Settings**".

Press "**Date/Time**".

Setting the date:

Press the arrows to set the day, month and year.

First set the day, then the month.

Setting the time:

Press these buttons to set hours and minutes.

Select or deselect the 24h format.

In 12h format, choose "**AM**" or "**PM**".

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time.

Date format:

Select the display format for the date.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Radio

The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the station presets are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).

The vehicle is too far from the selected station's transmitter, or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.

► Activate the "RDS" function in the upper bar to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.

The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS mode.

This is a perfectly normal phenomenon, and is not indicative of an audio system malfunction.

The aerial is missing or has been damaged (for example while entering a car wash or underground car park).
► Have the aerial checked by a dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations.
The name of the radio station changes.
The station is no longer received or its name has changed in the list.
Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).
The system interprets these details as the station name.
► Press the "**Radio Settings**" button then select "Update list". The radio reception is cut off while searching for available stations (approximately 30 seconds).

Media

Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).
Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the cataloguing time).
► Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some characters in information about the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.
The audio system is unable to process certain types of character.
► Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.
The connected device does not automatically launch playback.
► Start playback from the device.
Track names and playing times are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.
The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.

Telephone

I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.
The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.
► Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on.
► Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.
► Check the compatibility of the telephone on the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.
The volume depends on both the system and the telephone.
Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.
► Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
► Reduce ambient noise (close windows, reduce ventilation, slow down, etc.).
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.
Some telephones offer display options.
Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.
► Modify the telephone directory display settings.

Settings

When the treble and bass settings are changed, the ambience is deselected.
When the ambience is changed, the treble and bass settings are reset.
Selecting an ambience imposes the treble and bass settings, and vice versa.
► Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
There is a difference in sound quality between audio sources.
To allow for optimal listening quality, the sound settings can be tailored to different audio sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.
► Check that the sound settings are appropriate to the sources listened to. Adjust the sound functions to the middle position.
When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.

When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.
The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.
► Start the vehicle’s engine to increase the charge of the battery.

CITROËN Connect Radio

Multimedia audio system - Applications - Bluetooth® telephone

The functions and settings described vary according to the vehicle version and configuration, as well as the country of sale.

For safety reasons and because they require sustained attention by the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:
– Pairing the smartphone with the system via Bluetooth.
– Using the smartphone.
– Connecting to the CarPlay® or Android Auto applications (certain applications stop displaying when the vehicle is moving).
– Changing the system settings and configuration.

The system is protected so that it only operates in the vehicle.
The message **Energy economy mode** is displayed when the system is about to go into standby.

The system's Open Source Software (OSS) source codes are available at the following addresses:
https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/
https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/

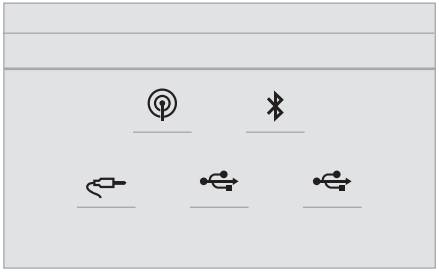
First steps

With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.
Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).
Use the buttons on either side of or below the touch screen to access the menus, then press the virtual buttons on the touch screen.
Depending on the model, use the "Source" and "Menu" buttons on the left of the touch screen to access the menus, then press the virtual buttons on the touch screen.
At all times it is possible to display the rolling menus by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.
All touch-sensitive areas on the screen are white.
On pages with multiple tabs at the bottom of the screen, you can switch between pages either by tapping the tab for the desired page or by swiping the pages to the left or right with your finger.

Press in the shaded area to go back up a level or confirm.
Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper bar of the touch screen:
– Air conditioning status information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
– Radio Media and Telephone menu status information.
– Privacy status information.
– Access to the touch screen and digital instrument panel settings.
Audio source selection (depending on equipment):
– FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
– Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
– USB Memory stick.
– Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).



In the "Settings" menu, it is possible to create a profile for an individual or for a group of people with shared interests, and configure a wide range of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, etc.). Settings are applied automatically.

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may enter standby mode (with the screen and sound off) for 5 minutes or more.
The system will resume normal operation when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls - Type 1

Radio:
Select the previous/next preset radio station.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous/next track.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

Change audio source (radio; USB; AUX if equipment connected; CD; streaming).

Confirm a selection.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.

Mute/restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls - Type 2

Voice commands:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).
Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

SRC **Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.

Telephone (short press): start telephone call.
Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.
Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

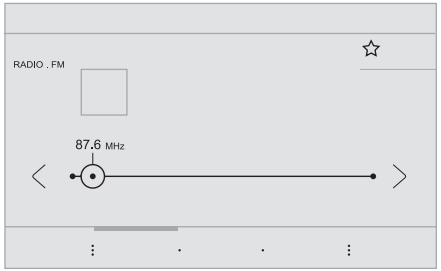
LIST **Radio**: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

Applications

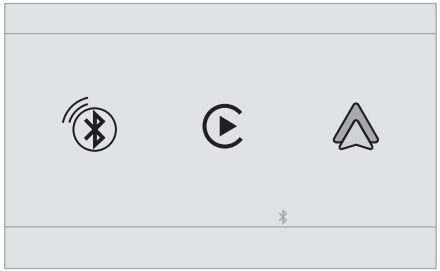
Access configurable equipment.

Radio Media



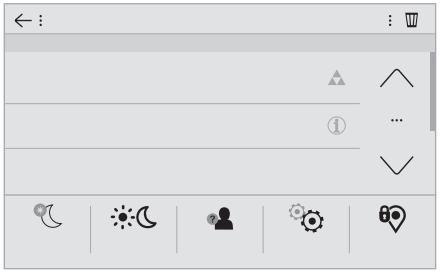
Select an audio source or radio station.

Telephone



Connect a mobile phone via Bluetooth®. Run certain applications from a smartphone connected via CarPlay® or Android Auto.

Settings

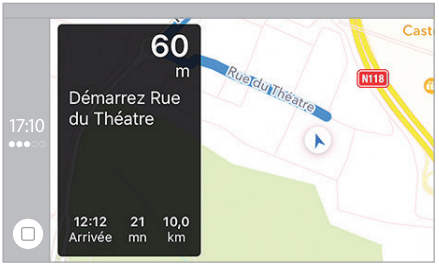


Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).

Driving

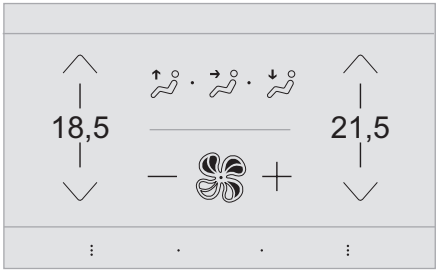
Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

Navigation



Configure the navigation and select your destination via CarPlay® or Android Auto.

Air conditioning



Manage various temperature and air flow settings.

Applications

Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

> ! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff; .gif; .jpg/jpeg; .bmp and .png.

Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "**Photos**".

Select a folder.

Select an image to view.

Press this button to display the details of the photo.

Press the back arrow to go back a level.

Managing messages

Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "SMS".

Select the "SMS" tab.

Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Press this button to search and select a recipient.

Select the "Quick messages" tab.

Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Press this button to write a new message.

Press the bin alongside the selected message to delete it.

Press this button alongside the selected message to display the secondary page.

Press this button to edit and modify the existing text.

Press this button to write a new message.

Press the bin to delete the message.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the slider to manually search for frequencies up or down.

Or

Press the frequency.

Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

> ! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
> The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode.
> This phenomenon is perfectly normal in the context of radio wave transmission, and in no way indicative of an audio system malfunction.

Changing the waveband

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Press "**Band**" to change waveband.
Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.
Or
Select a radio station or frequency.
Press "**Preset**".
Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Activate/deactivate "**RDS**".
Press in the shaded area to confirm.

RDS station tracking may not be available nationwide, as many radio stations do not cover 100 % of the country. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

The "Radio Text" function displays information transmitted by the radio station relating to the station or the currently playing song.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Activate/deactivate "**News**".
Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Playing TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the previously playing media resumes at the end of the message.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Activate/deactivate "**TA**".
Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Audio settings

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Press "**Audio settings**".
Select the "**Tone**", "**Balance**", "**Sound**", "**Voice**" or "**Ringtones**" tab to configure the sound settings.
Press the back arrow to confirm.

In the "**Tone**" tab, the **Ambience**, **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** sound settings are different and independent for each audio source.
In the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.
In the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".

The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) uses audio processing to adjust the sound quality according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

Onboard audio: Arkamys Sound Staging© optimises the sound distribution inside the passenger compartment.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality sound.
The various "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations organised in alphabetical order.

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**Band**" to select "**DAB band**".

Press in the shaded area to confirm.

FM-DAB Follow-up

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.

When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Follow-up" enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Activate/deactivate "**FM-DAB Follow-up**".

Press in the shaded area to confirm.

If "FM-DAB Follow-up" is activated, there may be a time offset of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio, and in some cases a change in volume. When the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB". To minimise this time lag, storing radio stations in the "DAB" band is recommended.

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM", or if "FM-DAB Follow-up" is not activated, the sound will cut out when the digital signal becomes too weak.

Media

USB port

Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory); this operation can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
Playlists are updated whenever the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The audio system memorises these lists, which will subsequently load faster if they have not been changed.

Auxiliary (AUX) jack socket

Depending on equipment

Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).
This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been selected in the audio settings.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system.
Controls are managed via the portable device.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**SOURCES**" button.
Select the source.

BluetoothStreaming®

Streaming allows you to listen to the audio feed from your smartphone.
The Bluetooth profile must be activated.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the system.
If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.
Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audio books/podcasts). It is also possible to use a classification structured in the form of a library.
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via the USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Devices are managed using the audio system controls.
Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, if compatible.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
All ".wma" files must be standard WMA 9 files.
The supported sampling rates are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.
To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. “ ? . ; ù).
Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

We recommend using the original USB cable for the portable device.

Telephone

USB sockets

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with **CarPlay®** or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

For the list of compatible smartphones, visit the Manufacturer's website in your country.

Synchronising a smartphone enables users to display applications that support the smartphone’s CarPlay® or Android Auto technology on the vehicle’s screen. For

CarPlay® technology, the CarPlay® function must first be activated on the smartphone.
Unlock the smartphone for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work.
As principles and standards are constantly changing, **we recommend keeping the smartphone's operating system up-to-date, together with the date and time on the smartphone and the system**.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

Depending on country.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.
The "**CarPlay**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.

Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or

If the smartphone has already connected by Bluetooth®.

Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to Radio Media mode; the source must be changed manually.

The CarPlay® navigation can be accessed at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Android Auto smartphone connection

Depending on country.

On the smartphone, download the Android Auto application.

The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**Android Auto**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.

When connecting a smartphone to the system, we recommend enabling Bluetooth® on the smartphone.

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.

Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the Android Auto display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the quality of the network.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the telephone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

The Bluetooth function must be activated and the telephone configured as "Visible to all" (in the telphone settings).

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on the telephone.

Procedure from the telephone

Select the name of the system in the list of detected devices.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press "**Bluetooth search**".
The list of detected telephones is displayed.

Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:
– "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
– "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the telephone),
– "**Mobile internet data**".

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may by prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

The ability of the system to connect just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.

The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Visit the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Automatic reconnection

On returning to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds after switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection" to display the list of paired devices.**

Press the "Details" button for a paired device.

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Managing paired telephones

This function lets you connect or disconnect a device or delete a pairing.

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection" to display the list of paired devices.**

Press on the name of the telephone selected in the list to disconnect it.

Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.

Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And

Make a long press

on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or

Press "**End call**".

Making a call

Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.

Parking the vehicle.

Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

Press "**Call" to start the call.**

Calling a contact

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or press and hold

the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

Press "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or

Press and hold

the steering mounted button.

Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.

Press the arrows or move the slider to set the ring volume.

Settings

Configuring profiles

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**", "**Profile 2**", "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".

Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.
Press "**OK**" to save.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press this button to activate the profile.

Press the back arrow again to confirm.

Press this button to reset the selected profile.

Adjusting the brightness

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press **Brightness**.

Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel (depending on version).

Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Modifying system settings

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Press "**System configuration**".

Press the "**Units**" tab to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Press the "**Factory settings**" tab to restore the initial settings.

> ! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (depending on version).

Press the "**System info**" tab to display the versions of the various modules installed in the system.
Press the "**Privacy**" tab,
or

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Privacy**" to activate or deactivate the private data mode.

Activate or deactivate:

– "**No sharing (data, vehicle position)**".
– "**Only data sharing**"
– "**Data and vehicle position sharing**"

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Press "**Screen configuration**".

Press "**Brightness**".

Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel (depending on version).

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press "**Animation**".

Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".

Select "**Animated transitions**".

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Selecting the language

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Select "**Language**" to change the language.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to set the time using the virtual keypad.

Press "**OK**" to save the time.

Press this button to set the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).

Activate or deactivate GPS synchronisation (UTC).

Press the back arrow to save the settings.

The system may not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Setting the date

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Date**".

Press this button to set the date.

Press the back arrow to save the date.

Select the display format for the date.

Press the back arrow again to confirm.

Time and date setting is only available if "GPS Synchronisation:" is deactivated.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Radio

The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the station presets are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).

The vehicle is too far from the selected station's transmitter, or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.

► Activate the "RDS" function in the upper bar to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.

The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS mode.

This is a perfectly normal phenomenon, and is not indicative of an audio system malfunction.

The aerial is missing or has been damaged (for example while entering a car wash or underground car park).

► Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations.

The name of the radio station changes.

The station is no longer received or its name has changed in the list.

► Press the round arrow on the "List" tab on the "Radio" page.

Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).

The system interprets these details as the station name.

► Press the round arrow on the "List" tab on the "Radio" page.

Media

Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).

Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the cataloguing time).

► Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.

Some characters in information about the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.

The audio system is unable to process certain types of character.

► Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.

Playback of streaming files does not start.

The connected device does not automatically launch playback.
► Start playback from the device.
Track names and playing times are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.
The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.

Telephone

I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.
The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the device may not be visible.
► Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on.
► Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.
► Check the compatibility of the telephone on the Brand's website (services).
Android Auto and/or CarPlay do not work.
Android Auto and CarPlay may not activate if the USB cables are of poor quality.
► Use genuine USB cables to ensure compatibility.
Android Auto and/or CarPlay do not work.
Android Auto and CarPlay are not available in all countries.
► Check the Google Android Auto or Apple website to see which countries are supported.
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.
The volume depends on both the system and the telephone.
► Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.
► Reduce ambient noise (close windows, turn down ventilation, slow down, etc.).
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.
Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.
► Modify the telephone directory display settings.

Settings

When the treble and bass settings are changed, the ambience is deselected.
When the ambience is changed, the treble and bass settings are reset.
Selecting an ambience imposes the treble and bass settings, and vice versa.
► Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When the balance settings are changed, the distribution is deselected.
When the distribution setting is changed, the balance settings are deselected.
Selecting a distribution setting imposes the balance settings, and vice versa.
► Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between audio sources.
To allow for optimal listening quality, the sound settings can be tailored to different audio sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.
► Check that the sound settings are appropriate to the sources listened to. Adjust the sound functions to the middle position.
When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.
When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.
The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.
► Start the vehicle’s engine to increase the charge of the battery.

CITROËN Connect Nav

GPS navigation - Applications - Multimedia audio system - Bluetooth® telephone

The functions and settings described vary according to the vehicle version and configuration, as well as the country of sale.

For safety reasons and because they require sustained attention by the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:
– Pairing the smartphone with the system via Bluetooth.
– Using the smartphone.
– Connecting to the CarPlay® or Android Auto applications (certain applications stop displaying when the vehicle is moving).
– Watching a video (the video stops when the vehicle starts to move again).
– Changing the system settings and configuration.

AM and DAB radio are not available on Hybrid vehicles.

The system is protected so that it only operates in the vehicle.
The message **Energy economy mode** is displayed when the system is about to go into standby.

System and map updates can be downloaded from the Brand's website.
The update procedure is also available there.

The system's Open Source Software (OSS) source codes are available at the following addresses:
https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/
https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/

First steps

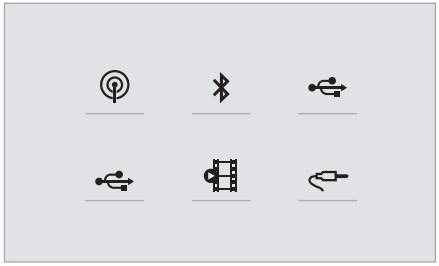
With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.
Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).
Use the menu buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.
Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons to access the rolling menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.
Display the rolling menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press the back arrow to go back a level.
Press "OK" to confirm.

The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the side bars or in the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment):
– Air conditioning status information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
– Go directly to the audio source selection option, to view the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
– Go to the "Notifications" of messages, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
– Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.
Audio source selection (depending on equipment):
– FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
– Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
– USB memory stick.

– Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).
– Video (depending on equipment).



In the "Settings" menu, it is possible to create a profile for an individual or for a group of people with shared interests, and configure a wide range of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, favourite contacts, etc.). Settings are applied automatically.

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may enter standby mode (with the screen and sound off) for 5 minutes or more.
The system will resume normal operation when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Voice control:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).
Short press, system voice control.
Long press, voice commands from smartphone or CarPlay®, Android Auto via the system.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

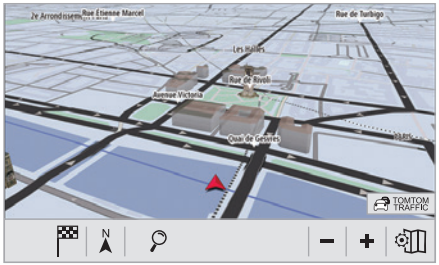
SRC **Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.
Telephone (short press): start telephone call.
Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.
Media (rotate): previous/next track, move through a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access presets.

LIST **Radio**: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of detected stations.

Menus

Connected navigation

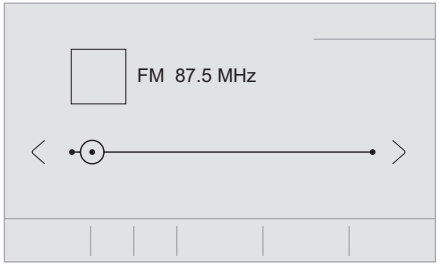


Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.
Use real-time services, depending on equipment.

Applications

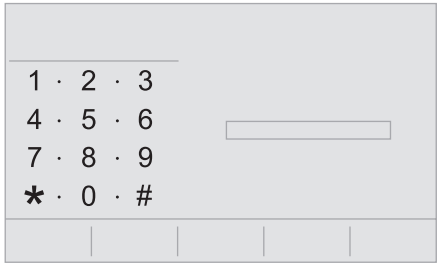
Run certain applications from a smartphone connected via CarPlay® or Android Auto.
Check the status of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.

Radio Media



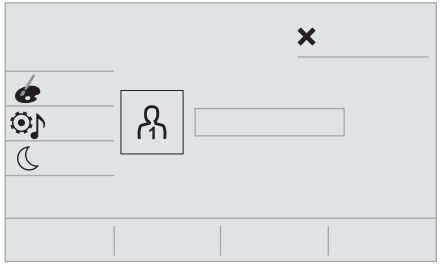
Select an audio source or radio station, or display photographs.

Telephone



Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.

Settings

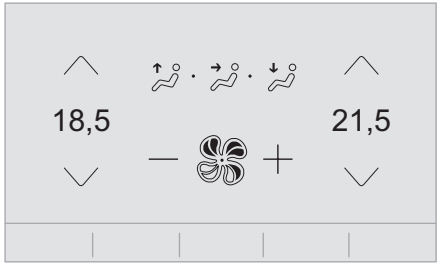


Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).

Vehicle

Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

Air conditioning



Manage various temperature and air flow settings.

Voice commands

Steering wheel-mounted controls

Voice commands:
Voice commands can be issued from any screen page after a short press on the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment), as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

! To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please follow these recommendations:
– **use natural language in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.**
– always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
– for best results, closing the windows and sunroof is recommended, to avoid extraneous interference (depending on version).
– before issuing a voice command, ask any other passengers to refrain from speaking.

First steps

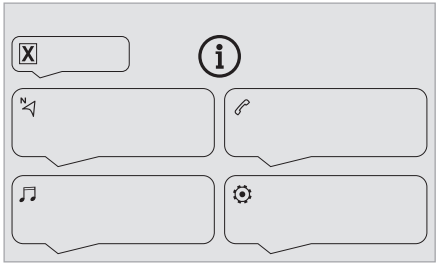
Example of a "voice command" for navigation:
"Navigate to address 11 regent street, London"

Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:
"Play artist Madonna"
Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:
"Call David Miller"

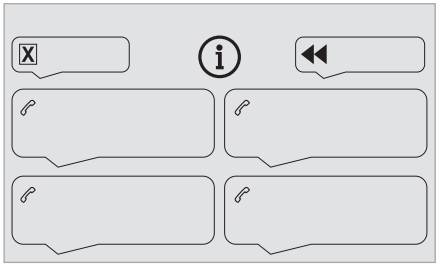
! The voice commands, with a choice of 17 languages (Arabic, Brazilian, Czech, Danish, Dutch, English, Farsi, French, German, Italian, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Swedish, Turkish), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system.
For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms.
Example: Guide to / Navigate to / Go to / ...
The voice commands in Arabic for: "Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city", are not available.

Information - Using the system

When voice commands are activated, by briefly pressing the button, help is displayed on the touch screen, offering various menus and enabling voice-based interaction with the system.



A number of commands are available when a menu is selected.



Press the Push To Talk button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask to me do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by

step. There's more information available in "novice" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.

Global voice commands

Voice commands

Set dialogue mode as novice - expert
Select user 1 / Select profile John
Increase temperature
Decrease temperature

Help messages

There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls". Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.

"Navigation" voice commands

Voice commands

Navigate home
Navigate to work
Navigate to preferred address, Tennis club
Navigate to contact, John Miller
Navigate to address 11 regent street, London

Help messages

To plan a route, say "navigate to" followed by the address, the contact name or an intersection. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", "navigate to contact, John Miller", or "navigate to intersection of Regent Street, London". You can specify if it's a preferred address, or a Point of Interest. For example, say "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", or "navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London". Or, you can just say, "navigate home". To see Points of Interest on a map, you can say things like "show POI hotels in Banbury". For more information say "help with points of interest" or "help with route guidance".
To choose a destination, say something like "navigate to line three" or "select line two". If you can't find the destination but the street's right, say for example "select the street in line three". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Voice commands

Tell me the remaining distance
Tell me the remaining time
Tell me the arrival time
Stop route guidance

Help messages

You can say "stop" or "resume route guidance". To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "remaining distance" or "arrival time". To learn more commands, try saying "help with navigation".

Voice commands

Show POI "hotel" at the destination
Show nearby POI petrol station
Navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London
Navigate to POI petrol station along the route

Help messages

To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury", "show nearby parking", "show hotel at the destination" or "show petrol station along the route". If you prefer to navigate directly to a point of interest, you can say "navigate to nearby petrol station". If you feel you are not being well understood, try to say the word "POI" in front of the point of interest. For example say "navigate to POI restaurant at the destination".
To choose a POI, say something like "select line 2". If you've searched for a Point of Interest and don't see the one you're after, you can filter further by saying something like "select POI in line 2", or "select the city in line 3". You can also scroll through the list by saying "next page" or "previous page".

Depending on the country, give destination (address) instructions in the language configured for the system.

"Radio Media" voice commands

Voice commands

Turn on source radio - Streaming Bluetooth - ...

Help messages

You can select an audio source by saying "turn on source" followed by the device name. For example, "turn on source, Streaming Bluetooth", or "turn on source, radio". Use the command "play" to specify the type of music you'd like to hear. You can choose between "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".

Voice commands

Tune to channel BBC Radio 2
Tune to 98.5 FM
Tune to preset number five

Help messages

You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say for example "tune to preset number five".

Voice commands

What's playing?

Help messages

To choose what you'd like to play, start by saying "play" and then the item. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play line 3" or "select line 2". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Voice commands

Play song Hey Jude
Play artist Madonna
Play album Thriller

Help messages

I'm not sure what you'd like to play. Please say "play" and then a song title, an album title, or an artist name. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play artist Madonna" or "play album Thriller". To select a line number from the display, say "select line two". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Media voice commands are available only with a USB connection.

"Telephone" voice commands

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session is closed.

Voice commands

Call David Miller*
Call voicemail*
Display calls*

Help messages

To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 107776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and the corresponding download has been performed.

David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting".
To choose a contact, say something like "select line three". To move around the list say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

"Text message" voice commands

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session is closed.

The "Text messages" voice commands function allows you to dictate and send an SMS.
Dictate the text, taking care to pause briefly between each word.
When you have finished, the voice recognition system will automatically generate an SMS.

Voice commands

Send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late

Help messages

From the list of quick messages, say the name of the one you'd like to send. To move around the list you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Voice commands

Send SMS to John Miller, I'm just arriving
Send SMS to David Miller at the office, don't wait for me

Help messages

Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Voice commands

Listen to most recent message*

Help messages

To hear your last message, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages.

The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

Navigation

Choice of a destination

To a new destination

Intuitive method:

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press "**Search…**".

Enter an address or the key words for the destination.

Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

Or

Guided method:

In order to be able to use the navigation, you must enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" (suggestions are displayed automatically when you begin typing), then enter the "**Number**" using the virtual keypad, or select

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and the corresponding download has been performed.

an address from the "**Contact**" list or the address "**History**".

i If you do not confirm the number, the navigation system will show one end of the street.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Enter address**".

Then

Select the "**Country**".

Select the keyboard “language”.

Change the keyboard "type" according to the selected "language": ABCDE; AZERTY; QWERTY or QWERTZ.

Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**", and confirm by pressing on the displayed suggestions.

OK Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And/or

Select "**See on map**" to choose the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start guided navigation.

i Zoom in/out using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

To a recent destination

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Recent**” tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**”.

OK Press "**OK**" to start guided navigation.

i Select "**Position**" to see the point of arrival on the map.

To "Home" or "My work"

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Preferred**” tab.

Select "**Home**".

Or

Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

To a contact

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Contact**” tab.

Select a contact in the list to start guided navigation.

To points of interest (POI)

Guided method:

Points of interest (POI) are listed in different categories.

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Points of interest**".

Select the "**Travel**", "**leisure**", "**Commercial**", "**Public**" or "**Geographic**” tab.

Or

Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.

OK Press "**OK**" to calculate the route.

Or

Intuitive method:

You can only select this method of using the service if a network connection is active; this may be either a "network connection provided by the vehicle", if you use the Citroën Connect Box solution, or else a "network connection provided by the user" via a smartphone,
In both cases, the system is automatically connected to the Internet, if network coverage permits.

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.
Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Search**".
Press on the mode shown in the bottom right of the screen (On-Board or Connected) to change the "Database".
Select the "Database" in "On-Board" mode (integrated into the map), or in "Connected" mode (connected to the Internet).
Press the back arrow to confirm.
Enter an address or the key words for the destination (POI).
Press "**OK**" to start the search.
Select the "**On the route**", "**Around the vehicle**" or "**At destination**" tab to refine your search.
Select the desired address to calculate the route.

To a point on the map

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.
Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.
Select the destination by pressing on the map.
Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.
Press this button to start guided navigation.
Or
Press this button to save the displayed address.

A long press on a point opens a list of nearby POIs.

To GPS coordinates

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.
Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.
Touch the screen with a finger to go to the next image.
Press this button to display the world map.
Using the grid, select the desired country or region by zooming.
Press this button to display or enter the GPS coordinates.
A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.
Choose the type of coordinates:
DMS for: Degrees, Minutes, Seconds.
DD for: Degrees, Decimals.
Press this button to start guided navigation.
Or
Press this button to save the displayed address.
OR
Press this button to enter the "**Latitude**" value using the virtual keypad.
And
Press this button to enter the "**Longitude**" value using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

Available in some countries.
TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are based on a European standard for traffic information broadcasting via the RDS system on FM radio, sending traffic information in real time. The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away when routes are calculated, to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

Danger zone alerts may or may not be displayed, depending on the applicable

legislation and subscription to the corresponding service.

Connected navigation

Connected navigation connection

Depending on version, vehicle trim level and subscription to online services and options.

Network connection provided by the vehicle

With the Citroën Connect Box solution, the system is automatically connected to the Internet and connected services, and does not require the user to provide a connection via their smartphone.

OR

Network connection provided by the user

For the list of compatible smartphones, visit the Brand's website in your country.

Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.

As processes and standards are constantly changing, we recommend you **update the smartphone operating system as well as the date and time on the smartphone and system**, to ensure that the communication process between the smartphone and the system functions correctly.

USB connection

Connect the USB cable.
The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

Bluetooth connection

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Connect-App" section).

Wi-Fi connection

Select a Wi-Fi network detected by the system and connect to it.

This function is only available if it has been activated either via the "Notifications" or via the "Applications" menu.

Press "**Notifications**".

Select Wi-Fi to activate it.

OR

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".

Select the "**Secured**", "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.

Select a network.

Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" network Wi-Fi and the "**Password**".

Press "**OK**" to establish a connection between the smartphone and the vehicle's system.

Usage restrictions:
With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only available with a Wi-Fi connection.
The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.

Authorize sending information

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**System configuration**".

Select the "**Private mode**" tab.

OR

Press "**Notifications**".

Press "**Private mode**".

THEN

Activate or deactivate:

– "**No data sharing except for company vehicles**".
– "**Only data sharing**"
– "**Sharing data and vehicle position**"

Settings specific to connected navigation

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.
Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

Select the "**Map**" tab.

Activate or deactivate:
– "**Allow declaration of danger zones**".
– "**Guidance to final destination on foot**".
These settings must be configured for each profile.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm your selection.

Select the "**Alerts**" tab.

Activate or deactivate:

– "**Advise of car park nearby**".
– "**Filling station alert**".
– "**Risk areas alert**" then press the warning icon (triangle) to configure the alerts.
– "**Give an audible warning**".
– "**Advise proximity of POI 1**".
– "**Advise proximity of POI 2**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm your selection.

The "Notifications", located in the upper bar, can be accessed at any time.

Danger zone alerts may or may not be displayed, depending on the applicable legislation and subscription to the corresponding service.

TOMTOM TRAFFIC When "TOMTOM TRAFFIC" appears, the services are available.

The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.
A Connected Services pack:
– Weather,
– Filling stations,
– Car park,
– Traffic,
– POI local search.
A Danger area pack (optional).

Declaration: "Risk areas alert"

To send information about danger zones, select the option:**Allow declaration of danger zones**

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**Declare a new danger zone**" button located in the side bars or the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment).

Select the "**Type**" option to select the type of "Danger area".

Select the "**"Speed**" option and enter it using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to save and send the information.

Displaying fuel information

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press this button to display the list of services.

Press "**POI on map" to display the list of points of interest.**

Press one of the buttons to search for "**Stations**".

Activate/deactivate "**Stations**".

Press this button to display a secondary page.

Select the "**Settings**" tab.

Select the desired fuel.

OK Press "**OK**" to save.

Displaying charging station details

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press this button to display the list of services.

Press "**POI on map" to display the list of points of interest.**

Press one of the buttons to search for "**Stations**".

Activate/deactivate "**Stations**".

Press this button to display a secondary page.

Select the "**Settings**" tab.

Select the desired connector type.

Press "**OK**" to save.

Displaying weather information

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press this button to display the list of services.

Select "**View map**".

Select "**Weather**".

Press this button to display basic information.

Press this button to display detailed weather information.

The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day. The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Applications

USB sockets

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with **CarPlay**® or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

For the list of compatible smartphones, visit the Manufacturer's website in your country.

Synchronising a smartphone enables users to display applications that support the smartphone's CarPlay® or Android Auto technology on the vehicle's screen. For CarPlay® technology, the CarPlay® function must first be activated on the smartphone. Unlock the smartphone for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work.

As principles and standards are constantly changing, **we recommend keeping the smartphone's operating system up-to-date, together with the date and time on the smartphone and the system**.

Connectivity

Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to access the **CarPlay**® or **Android Auto** functions.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

Depending on country.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.
The "**CarPlay**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.

Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

Press "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or

Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the main page.
Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "CarPlay®" function.
Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to Radio Media mode; the source must be changed manually.

Android Auto smartphone connection

Depending on country.

Install the "**Android Auto**" application on the smartphone via "Google Play".
The "**Android Auto**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.

Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.
From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the main page.
Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "Android Auto" function.
Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.
Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the Android Auto display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

In Android Auto mode, the function that displays rolling menus by briefly pressing the screen with three fingers is disabled.

There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the quality of the network.

Car Apps

Press **Applications** to display the main page.
Press "**Car Apps**" to display the applications home page.

Internet Browser

Press **Applications** to display the main page.
Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "**Connected Apps**" function.
Press "**Connected Apps**" to display the browser home page.

Select the country of residence.

OK Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Bluetooth connection®

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the smartphone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

The Bluetooth function must be activated and the smartphone configured as "Visible to all".

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the smartphone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the smartphone.

If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on the smartphone.

Procedure from the smartphone

Select the name of the system in the list of detected devices.
In the system, accept the connection request from the smartphone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Press "**Bluetooth connection**".
Select "**Search**".
The list of detected smartphones is displayed.
Select the name of the chosen smartphone in the list.

> Depending on the type of smartphone, you may by prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the smartphone with 3 profiles:
– "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
– "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the smartphone),
– "**Mobile internet data**".

> The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation (if the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), after first activating smartphone connection sharing.

Select one or more profiles.
Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Wi-Fi connection

Network connection via the smartphone's Wi-Fi.
Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".
Select the "**Secured**", "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.
Select a network.
Using the virtual keypad , enter the Wi-Fi network "**Key**" and "**Password**".
Press "**OK**" to establish the connection.

> The Wi-Fi connection and Wi-Fi connection sharing are exclusive.

Wi-Fi connection sharing

Depending on equipment.
Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.
Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Share Wi-Fi connection**".
Select the "**Activation**" tab to activate or deactivate Wi-Fi connection sharing.
And/or
Select the "**Settings**" tab to change the system's network name and password.
Press "**OK**" to confirm.

> To protect against unauthorised access and to make all systems as secure as possible, the use of a security code or a complex password is recommended.

Managing connections

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Manage connection**".
With this function, you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press "**Frequency**".

Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the slider to manually search for frequencies up or down.

Or

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Radio stations**" on the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".

Enter the values using the virtual keypad. First enter the units then click on the decimals field to enter the figures after the decimal point.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode.

This phenomenon is perfectly normal in the context of radio wave transmission, and in no way indicative of an audio system malfunction.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
(refer to the corresponding section)

Press "**Presets**".

Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Changing the waveband

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

To change the waveband, press "Band…", displayed at the top right of the screen.

Activating/Deactivating RDS

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies.

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate/deactivate "**Station follow**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i RDS station tracking may not be available nationwide, as many radio stations do not cover 100 % of the country. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

The "Radio Text" function displays information transmitted by the radio station relating to the station or the currently playing song.

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate/deactivate "**Display radio text**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Playing TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the

TA message can be heard. Normal play of the previously playing media resumes at the end of the message.
Select "**Announcements**".
Activate/deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".
OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality sound.
The various "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations organised in alphabetical order.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press “Band …" at the top right of the screen to display the "**DAB**" waveband.

FM-DAB tracking

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, “FM-DAB auto tracking" enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.
Select "**Radio settings**".
Select "**General**".
Activate/deactivate "**FM-DAB Follow-up**".
Activate/deactivate "**Station follow**".
OK Press "**OK**".

i If "FM-DAB auto tracking" is activated, there may be a time lag of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio, and in some cases a change in volume. When the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB". To minimise this time lag, storing radio stations in the "DAB" band is recommended.

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("**FM-DAB**" greyed out), or "FM-DAB auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out when the digital signal becomes too weak.

Media

USB port

Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory); this operation can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
Playlists are updated whenever the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The audio system memorises these lists, which will subsequently load faster if they have not been changed.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment
Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).
This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been selected in the audio settings.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system.
Controls are managed via the portable device.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Select "**SOURCES**".
Select the source.

Watching a video

Depending on equipment/Depending on version/Depending on country.
Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

> Video control commands are accessible only through the touch screen.

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Select "**SOURCES**".
Select **Video** to start the video.
To remove the USB memory stick, press the pause button to stop the video, then remove the memory stick.
The system can play video files in the MPEG-4 Part 2, MPEG-2, MPEG-1, H.264, H.263, VP8, WMV and RealVideo formats.

Streaming Bluetooth®

Streaming allows you to listen to the audio feed from your smartphone.
The Bluetooth profile must be activated.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of the audio system.
If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

> Once connected in streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.
Control is via the audio system.

> The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audio books/podcasts).
> The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices and Apple® players via the USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Devices are managed using the audio system controls.
Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, if compatible.
The audio system will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
All ".wma" files must be standard WMA 9 files.
The supported sampling rates are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.
To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. “ ? . ; ù).
Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

> We recommend using the original USB cable for the portable device.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the telephone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

i The Bluetooth function must be activated and the telephone configured as "Visible to all" (in the telphone settings).

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

i If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on the telephone.

Procedure from the telephone

Select the system name in the list of detected devices.
In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press "**Bluetooth search**".
Or
Select "**Search**".
The list of detected telephones is displayed.
Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:
– "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
– "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the telephone),
– "**Mobile internet data**".

i The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation, after first activating smartphone connection sharing.

Select one or more profiles.
Press "**OK**" to confirm.
Depending on the type of telephone, you may by prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

i The ability of the system to connect just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.

i The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Visit the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Automatic reconnection

On returning to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds after switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).
To modify the connection profile:
Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.
Press the "Details" button.
Select one or more profiles.
Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Managing paired telephones

This function lets you connect or disconnect a device or delete a pairing.

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.

Press on the name of the telephone selected in the list to disconnect it.

Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.

Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Make a short press on the steering mounted telephone button to accept an incoming call.

And

Make a long press

on the steering mounted telephone button to reject the call.

Or

Select "**End call**" on the touch screen.

Making a call

Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.

Park the vehicle.

Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

Press "**Call" to start the call.**

Calling a contact

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or press and hold

the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or

Press and hold

the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts/entries

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Select "**Contact**".

Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

Press the "**Telephone**" tab to enter the contact's telephone number(s).

Press the "**Address**" tab to enter the contact's address(es).

Press the "**Email**" tab to enter the contact's email address(es).

Press "**OK**" to save.

Press this button to sort contacts by Surname+first name or by First name+surname.

The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.
Select the "**All**", "**Incoming**" or "**Sent**" tab.
Select the details of the message chosen in one of the lists.
Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.
Press "**Call" to start the call.**
Press "**Play**" to listen to the message.

Access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility between the smartphone and the onboard system.
Some smartphones retrieve messages or email messages more slowly than others.

Managing quick messages

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.
Select the "**Delayed**", "**My arrival**", "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab, enabling you to create new messages.
Press "**Create**" to write a new message.
Select the message chosen in one of the lists.
Press "**Transfer**" to select one or more recipients.
Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

Managing email

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.
Select the "**Incoming**", "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.
Select the message chosen in one of the lists.
Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

Access to email messages depends on the compatibility between the smartphone and the onboard system.

Settings

Audio settings

Press **Settings** to display the main page.
Select "**Audio settings**".
Then select "**Ambience**", "**Position**", "**Sound**", "**Voice**" or "**Ringtone**".
Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) uses audio processing to adjust the sound quality according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.
Available only with the front and rear speaker configuration.

The **Ambience** setting (choice of 6 ambiances) as well as for **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source.
Activate or deactivate "**Loudness**".

The "**Position**" settings (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources.
Activate or deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".

Onboard audio: Arkamys Sound Staging© optimises the sound distribution inside the passenger compartment.

Configuring profiles

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**", "**Profile 2**", "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".

Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.

Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port.

Select the photograph.

OK Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

OK Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.

The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.

00.0 Press this button to reset the selected profile.

Resetting the selected profile activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to link "**Audio settings**" with it.

Select "**Audio settings**".

Then select "**Ambience**", "**Position**"; "**Sound**", "**Voice**" or "**Ringtone**".

OK Press "**OK**" to save the selected profile's settings.

Modifying system settings

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Screen configuration**".

Select "**Animation**".

Activate or deactivate:**Automatic scrolling**

Select "**Brightness**".

Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel.

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**System settings**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.
Select "**Factory settings**" to restore the initial settings.

Resetting the system to "Factory settings" activates English and degrees Fahrenheit and deactivates summer time.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the various modules installed in the system.

Selecting the language

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Date**".

Press this button to set the date.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Select the display format for the date.

Time and date setting is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to set the time using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to set the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).

Activate or deactivate GPS synchronisation (UTC).

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The system may not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Colour schemes

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Select "**Color schemes**".

Select a colour scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.

Whenever the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Navigation

I cannot enter the navigation address.
The address is not recognised.
► Use the "intuitive method" by pressing the "Search…" button at the bottom of the "Navigation" page.

The route calculation is not successful.
The route settings may conflict with the current location (for example, if toll roads are excluded but the vehicle is on a toll road).
► Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.

I am not receiving "Danger zone" alerts.
You have not subscribed to the online services option.
► If you have subscribed to the option:
- a few days may elapse before the service is activated,
- services may not be selected in the system menu,
- online services are not active ("TOMTOM TRAFFIC" not shown on the map).

The POIs do not appear.
The POIs have not been selected.
► Set the zoom level to 200 metres (656 ft), or select POIs from the POI list.

The "Danger zone" audible warning feature is not working.
The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.

► Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the sound settings.

The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.

The route settings do not take account of TMC messages.

► Configure the "Traffic info" function in the route settings list (None, Manual or Automatic).

I am receiving a "Danger zone" alert which is not on my route.

As well as providing guided navigation, the system announces all "Danger areas" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger areas" located on nearby or parallel roads.

► Zoom the map to show the exact location of the "Danger area". You can select "On the route" to stop receiving warnings or decrease the warning duration.

Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.

On starting, a few minutes may elapse before the system begins to receive traffic information.

► Wait until traffic information is being received correctly (traffic information icons shown on the map).

In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, etc.) are listed for the traffic information.

This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.

The altitude is not displayed.

On starting, GPS initialisation may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.

► Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.

Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, etc.) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.

This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.

My navigation is no longer connected.

During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.

► Check that the online services are activated (settings, contract).

Radio

The reception quality of the radio station being listened to gradually deteriorates or the station presets are not working (e.g. no sound, "87.5" MHz is displayed).

The vehicle is too far from the selected station's transmitter, or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.

► Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.

The aerial is missing or damaged (e.g. when going through a car wash or in an underground car park).

► Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

The surrounding area (e.g. hill, building, tunnel, underground car park, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS tracking mode.

This is a perfectly normal phenomenon, and is not indicative of an audio system malfunction.

I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.

The name of the radio station changes.

The station is no longer received or its name has changed in the list.

Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).

The system interprets these details as the station name.

► Press "Update list" in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.

Media

Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).

Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the cataloguing time).

► Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.

There may be an extended pause after inserting a USB stick.

The system reads a variety of data (folder, title, artist, etc.). This can take from a few seconds to a few minutes.
This is perfectly normal.
Some characters in information about the currently playing media may not be displayed correctly.
The audio system is unable to process certain types of character.
► Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.
The connected device does not automatically launch playback.
► Start playback from the device.
Track names and playing times are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.
The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.

Telephone

I am unable to connect my Bluetooth telephone.
The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the device may not be visible.
► Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on.
► Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
► Deactivate then reactivate the telephone's Bluetooth function.
The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.
► You can check the compatibility of the telephone on the Brand's website (services).
Android Auto and/or CarPlay do not work.
Android Auto and CarPlay may not activate if the USB cables are of poor quality.
► Use genuine USB cables to ensure compatibility.
Android Auto and/or CarPlay do not work.
Android Auto and CarPlay are not available in all countries.
► Check the list of supported countries via these websites: Google Android Auto or Apple.
The volume of the telephone connected via Bluetooth is too low.
The volume depends on both the system and the telephone.
► Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.
► Reduce ambient noise (e.g. close the windows, reduce ventilation, slow down).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.
The options for synchronising contacts are: synchronise the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronisations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.
► Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.
Some telephones offer display options.
Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.
► Modify the telephone directory display settings.
The system is not receiving SMS text messages.
Bluetooth mode does not allow SMS text messages to be sent to the system.

Settings

When the treble and bass settings are changed, the ambience is deselected.
When the ambience is changed, the treble and bass settings are reset.
Selecting an ambience imposes the treble and bass settings, and vice versa.
► Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When the balance settings are changed, the distribution is deselected.
When the distribution setting is changed, the balance settings are deselected.
Selecting a distribution setting imposes the balance settings, and vice versa.
► Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between audio sources.
To allow for optimal listening quality, the sound settings can be tailored to different audio sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.

► Check that the sound settings are appropriate to the sources listened to. We recommend setting the sound functions (Bass, Treble, Balance) to the middle position, setting the musical ambience to "None", setting loudness correction to "Active" in USB mode and "Inactive" in Radio mode.

► In all cases, after applying sound settings, adjust the volume level on the portable device (to a high level) first. Then adjust the volume level on the audio system.

When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.

When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.

The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.

► Start the vehicle’s engine to increase the charge of the battery.

The date and time cannot be set.

Date and time settings are only available if satellite synchronisation is deactivated.

► Settings menu/Options/Date-Time Setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

Event data recorders

Electronic control units are installed in your vehicle. Control units process data which is received by vehicle sensors, for example, or which they generate themselves or exchange amongst themselves. Some control units are necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle, others assist you while you drive (driver assistance systems), while others provide comfort or infotainment functions.
The following contains general information about data processing in the vehicle. You will find additional information as to which specific data is uploaded, stored and passed on to third parties and for what purpose in your vehicle under the key word Data Protection closely linked to the references for the affected functional characteristics in the relevant owner's manual or in the general terms of sale. These are also available online.

Vehicle operating data

The control units process the data used for the operation of the vehicle.
This data includes, for example:
– Information about the state of the vehicle (e.g. speed, travel time, lateral acceleration, wheel rotation rate, fastened seat belts display).
– Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature, rain sensor, distance sensor).
As a general rule, this data is temporary, is not stored for longer than one operating cycle and is only used within the vehicle itself. The control units often record this data (including the vehicle's key). This function allows either the temporary or permanent storage of information about the state of the vehicle, stresses on components, servicing requirements, as well as events and technical errors.
Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, the data stored is as follows:
– Operating state of system components (e.g. filling level, tyre pressures, battery charge status).
– Faults and malfunctions in important system components (e.g. lamps, brakes).
– System reactions in specific driving situations (e.g. deployment of an airbag, triggering of stability control and braking systems).
– Information about events which have damaged the vehicle.
– For electric and rechargeable hybrid vehicles, the traction battery charge level and the estimated driving range.
In particular circumstances (e.g. if the vehicle has detected a malfunction), it may be necessary to record data which would otherwise simply not be stored.
When taking your vehicle in for servicing (e.g. repairs, maintenance), the stored operating data may be read along with the vehicle's identification number and used if necessary.
The personnel working for the servicing network (e.g. garages, manufacturers) or third parties (e.g. roadside assistance agents) may read the vehicle's data. This also applies to work carried out under warranty and quality assurance measures.
This data is generally read via the OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) port fitted by law to the vehicle. It is used to report on the technical state of the vehicle or its components and facilitates the diagnosis of malfunctions, in compliance with warranty obligations and for quality improvement. This data, in particular the information relating to stress on components, technical events, operator errors and other malfunctions, is sent to the Manufacturer, if necessary, along with the vehicle's identification number. The Manufacturer's liability may also be engaged. The Manufacturer may also use the operating data taken from the vehicle for product recalls. This data may also be used to check the customer's warranty and any claims made under warranty.
Any malfunctions stored in the vehicle may be reset by an after-sales service company during servicing or repair work, or at your request.

Comfort and infotainment functions

Comfort settings and personalised settings may be saved in the vehicle and modified or reinitialised at any time.
Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, this may include:
– Seat and steering wheel position settings.

– Chassis and air conditioning settings.
– Personalised settings such as the interior lighting.
You can enter your own data into the functions of your vehicle's audio and telematic system, as part of the selected functionalities.
Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, this may include:
– Multimedia data such as music, videos or photos to be read by an integrated multimedia system.
– Address book data to be used with an integrated hands-free system or with an integrated navigation system.
– Entered destinations.
– Data regarding the use of online services.
This data for the comfort and infotainment functions may be stored locally in the vehicle or saved to a device that you have connected to the vehicle (e.g. smartphone, USB memory stick or MP3 player). Data that you have entered yourself may be deleted at any time.
This data may also be transmitted outside the vehicle at your request, particularly when using online services in line with the settings that you have selected.

Smartphone integration (e.g. Android Auto® or Apple®CarPlay®)

If your vehicle is equipped accordingly, you can connect your smartphone or another mobile device to the vehicle in order to operate it using the vehicle's integrated controls. Images and sounds from the smartphone can be transmitted through the audio and telematics system.
Specific information is simultaneously sent to your smartphone. Depending on the type of integration, this includes data such as location, day/night mode and other general information about the vehicle. For more information, please refer to the user instructions for the vehicle or the audio and telematics system.
Integrating a smartphone allows you to use its applications, such as a navigation app or music player. No other integration between the smartphone and the vehicle is possible, in particular active access to vehicle data. How the data is processed subsequently is determined by the supplier of the application being used.
The ability the change settings depends on the application in question and on the operating system installed on your smartphone.

Online services

If your vehicle is connected to a wireless network, data can be exchanged between your vehicle and other systems. Connection to a wireless network is made possible via a transmitter located in your vehicle or a mobile device that you have provided (e.g. smartphone).
The online services can be used via this wireless connection. These include online services and applications (apps) provided to you by the Manufacturer or other suppliers.

Exclusive services

As regards the Manufacturer's online services, the corresponding functions are described by the Manufacturer in an appropriate medium (e.g. handbook, Manufacturer's website) and the information about data protection is provided.
Personal data may be used for online services. The exchange of data for this purpose takes place over a secure connection, using for example the Manufacturer's dedicated computer systems. The collection, processing and use of personal data for the development of services are carried out solely on the basis of a legal authorisation, for example in the case of a legal emergency call system or a contractual agreement or else under a consent agreement.
You can activate or deactivate the services and functions (some may be chargeable) and, in some cases, the vehicle's entire connection to the wireless network. This does not include the

statutory functions and services such as the emergency or assistance call system.

Third-party services

If you use online services provided by other (third-party) suppliers, these services are subject to the responsibility, the data protection and the terms and conditions of use of the supplier in question. The Manufacturer often has no influence over the content exchanged in this regard.
Please therefore ensure that you are aware of the nature, extent and purpose of the collection and use of personal data as part of the third-party services provided by the service provider in question.

A

ABS 95
Accelerated charging unit (Wallbox) 179
Accessories 92
Access to the 3rd row 58
Access to the spare wheel 206–207
Active Safety Brake 152–154
AdBlue® 197
AdBlue® tank 198
Additive, Diesel 195–196
Adjusting headlamps 88
Adjusting head restraints 59
Adjusting seat 51, 58
Adjusting the air distribution 75–76
Adjusting the air flow 75–76
Adjusting the date 258, 280
Adjusting the height and reach of the steering wheel 53
Adjusting the lumbar support 51
Adjusting the temperature 75–76
Adjusting the time 244, 257, 281
Advanced Grip Control 97–98
Advice on care and maintenance 177, 200
Advice on driving 8, 117–118
Airbags 103, 105–107
Airbags, curtain 104–106
Airbags, front 104–105, 108
Airbags, lateral 104–105
Air conditioning 73, 76, 79
Air conditioning, digital 77
Air conditioning, dual-zone automatic 75–76
Air conditioning, electronic (with display screen) 79
Air conditioning, manual 74–75
Air intake 75–76
Air vents 73
Alarm 45–46
Alarm, volumetric 46
Android Auto connection 272
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 95
Antitheft / Immobiliser 33
Apple CarPlay connection 254, 271
Applications 272
Area, loading 34, 42, 67
Armrest 51
Armrest, front 60
Assistance call 92–93
Assistance, emergency braking 95, 154
Audible warning 95
Audio streaming (Bluetooth) 241, 253, 276

B

Battery, 12 V 187, 195, 214–217
Battery, ancillaries 214–215
Battery, charging 216–217
Battery, remote control 40, 81
Bench seat, one-piece, fixed 58
Blanking screen (snow shield) 188
Blind spot sensors 158
BlueHDi 195, 202
Bluetooth (hands-free) 242–243, 255, 277
Bluetooth (telephone) 242–243, 255–256, 277–278
Bluetooth touch screen audio system 28
Bodywork 201
Bonnet 192
Boot lid 37, 39
Bottle holder 60
Brake discs 196
Brake lamps 213
Brakes 196
Braking 133
Braking assistance system 95
Braking, automatic emergency 152–154
Braking, dynamic emergency 124–125
Brightness 244, 257
Bulbs 210
Bulbs (changing) 209–210
Bulbs (changing, type) 210

C

Cable, audio 275
Cable, Jack 275
Capacity, fuel tank 174–175
Cap, fuel filler 174–175
Care of the bodywork 201
CD 241
CD, MP3 241
Central locking 32, 37
Changing a bulb 209–210
Changing a fuse 214

Changing a wheel 203, 206
Changing a wiper blade 89–90
Changing the remote control battery 40
Changing to free-wheeling 199, 218
Charger, induction 62
Charger, wireless 62
Charging cable 180
Charging cable (Electric) 179
Charging connector (Electric) 178, 183, 185–186
Charging flap (Electric) 178, 183, 185–186
Charging system (Electric) 5, 9, 30, 176, 193
Charging the traction battery (Electric) 176, 183, 185–186
Checking the levels 193–195
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) 204–205
Checks 193, 195–197
Checks, routine 195–197
Child lock 116
Children 102, 110, 114–116
Children (safety) 116
Child seats 102, 106–107, 109–111, 114–115
Child seats, conventional 109
Child seats, i-Size 115
Child seats, ISOFIX 114–116
Cleaning (advice) 177, 200–201
Closing the doors 32, 37
Collision Risk Alert 152–153
Configuration, vehicle 29–30
Connected applications 272
Connection, Bluetooth 242–243, 255–256, 272–273, 277–278
Connection, MirrorLink 254
Connection, Wi-Fi network 273
Connectivity 271
Consumption figures 30
Container, AdBlue® 198
Control, emergency boot release 39
Control, emergency door 32, 38–39
Control, heated seats 52–53
Controls, steering mounted 131
Control stalk, lighting 83–84
Control stalk, wipers 88–90
Control unit 179–180
Courtesy lamp 81–82
Courtesy lamp, front 82
Courtesy lamp, rear 82
Courtesy lamps 82
Cover, load space 65
Cruise control 142–143, 146–148, 152
Cruise control, adaptive 148
Cruise control by speed limit recognition 142–143
Cruise control, dynamic with Stop function 142–143
Cup holder 60

D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) - Digital radio 240, 252, 275
Date (setting) 258, 280
Daytime running lamps 85, 210–211
Deactivating the passenger airbag 104, 108–109
Deactivation of DSC (ESC) 96
Deadlocking 38
Deferred charging 31
Deferred charging (Electric) 30, 178, 183, 186
Defrosting 54, 77
Defrosting, front 77
Demisting 77
Demisting, front 77
Demisting, rear 53, 78
Demisting, rear screen 53, 78
Dials and gauges 10, 12
Digital instrument panel 11–13
Dimensions 221
Dipstick 193
Direction indicators 84, 210, 212–213
Display, head-up 138
Display screen, instrument panel 10
Domestic charging 180
Domestic charging (Electric) 185–186, 236
Doors, side 43
Doors, side-hinged 37–38
Driver’s attention warning 160
Drive selector (Electric) 132, 196
Driving 117–118
Driving aids camera (warnings) 139
Driving aids (recommendations) 139
Driving economically 8
Driving modes 133–134

Dynamic stability control (DSC) 96–98

E

EBFD 95
Eco-driving (advice) 8
ECO mode 134
Economy mode 187
Electric motor 5, 9, 30, 176, 190, 193, 215, 218, 236
Electric windows 47
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) 95
Emergency braking assistance (EBA) 95
Emergency call 92–93
Emergency warning lamps 67, 94
Emissions control system, SCR 197
Energy economy mode 187
Energy flows 30
Energy recovery 133
Engine compartment 193
Engine, Diesel 174, 193, 202, 229–231, 235
Engine, petrol 193, 227–228
Engines 227–231, 235
Environment 8, 40, 81, 118
ESC (electronic stability control) 95
Expanded traffic sign recognition 143
Exterior lighting 86

F

Fatigue detection 160
Filling the AdBlue® tank 195, 198
Filling the fuel tank 174–175
Filter, air 196
Filter, oil 196
Filter, particle 195–196
Filter, passenger compartment 73, 196
Finisher 209
Fitting a wheel 207–208
Fitting roof bars 191
Fittings, interior 60, 64
Flap, fuel filler 174–175
Flap, removable 69
Flashing indicators 84, 213
Fluid, brake 194
Fluid, engine coolant 194
Foglamp, rear 213
Foglamps 212
Foglamps, front 83, 210
Foglamps, rear 83
Folding the rear seats 56–57
Frequency (radio) 274
Fuel 8, 174
Fuel consumption 8
Fuel tank 174–176
Fuses 214

G

Gauge, fuel 174–175
Gearbox, automatic 126–132, 196, 216
Gearbox, manual 126–127, 196
Gear lever, automatic gearbox 127–129
Gear lever, manual gearbox 126–127
Gear shift indicator ~ Gear efficiency indicator 134
Glove box 60
G.P.S. 268

H

Hazard warning lamps 67, 94
Headlamp adjustment 88
Headlamps, automatic dipping 86–87
Headlamps, automatic illumination 84–86
Headlamps, dipped beam 83, 210–211
Headlamps, halogen 210
Headlamps, main beam 83, 86, 210, 212
Head restraints, front 59
Head restraints, rear 56–57
Head-up display 138–139
Heating 73–75, 79–80
Heating, additional 46, 79–80
Heating, programmable 46, 79–81
High voltage 176
Hill Assist Descent Control (HADC) 98
Hill start assist 126
Histogramme, fuel consumption 30

Horn 95

I

Ignition 121–122, 278
Ignition on 122
Immobiliser, electronic 119
Indicator lamps, operation 83
Indicators, direction 84
Inflating tyres 197, 236
Inflating tyres and accessories
(using the kit) 204–205
Infrared camera 139
Instrument panel 10, 10–12, 10–13, 140
Instrument panel, LCD 10
Instrument panel, matrix 10
Instrument panels 10
Internet browser 269, 272
ISOFIX 114

J

Jack 206, 275
Jump starting 215

K

Key 32–35, 37–39
Key, electronic 32, 122
Keyless Entry and Starting 32–37, 120–121
Key not recognised 122
Key with remote control 37
Kit, hands-free 242–243, 255, 277
Kit, puncture repair 203
Kit, temporary puncture repair 202–205

L

Labels 6, 58
Labels, identification 236
Lamps, front 210
Lamps, parking 84
Lamps, rear 213
Lane departure warning active 155
LEDs - Light-emitting diodes 85, 210–211
Level, AdBlue® 195
Level, brake fluid 194
Level, Diesel additive 195–196
Level, engine coolant 194
Level, engine oil 193
Level, headlamp wash 89
Levels and checks 193–195
Level, screenwash fluid 89, 195
Light-emitting diodes - LEDs 85, 210–211
Lighting 83
Lighting, exterior 83, 86
Lighting, guide-me home 85–86
Lighting, welcome 85–86
Loading 67, 191
Load reduction mode 188
Load restraint 66
Locating your vehicle 33
Locking 32–33, 37
Locking from the inside 41–42
Long load support bar 45
Low fuel level 174–175
Lumbar 51

M

Mains socket (domestic network) 179
Maintenance (advice) 177, 200
Maintenance, routine 140, 195
Manoeuvring aids (recommendations) 139
Markings, identification 236
Mat 60, 140
Memorising a speed 152
Menu 254
Menu, main 30
Menus (audio) 238–239, 249–250, 261–262
Menu short cuts 30
Messages 279
Messages, quick 279
Mirror, child surveillance 54
Mirror, rear view 54
Mirrors, door 53–54, 78, 158
Misfuel prevention 175–176
Mobile application 31, 81, 186
Motor, electric 121, 193, 236
Mountings, ISOFIX 112

N

Navigation 266–268
Navigation, connected 269–271
Net 65–66
Net, high load retaining 64
Number plate lamps 214

O

Obstacle detection 161
Oil change 193
Oil consumption 193
OII, engine 193
On-board tools 202–203
Opening the bonnet 192
Opening the boot 32–33
Opening the doors 32–33
Overhead storage 60

P

Pads, brake 196
Paint 201, 236
Paint colour code 236
Park Assist 169
Parking brake 123, 196
Parking brake, electric 123–125, 197
Parking sensors, audible and visual 161
Parking sensors, front 162
Parking sensors, rear 161
Passenger compartment temperature pre-conditioning (Electric) 81
Passenger's air bag 70
Pedestrian horn (Electric) 95, 118
Personalisation 12–13
Plates, identification 236
Player, Apple® 241, 253, 276
Player, USB 241, 252, 275
Port, USB 62, 241, 252–253, 271, 275
Power indicator (Electric) 9
Pressures, tyres 197, 206, 209, 236
Pre-tensioning seat belts 102
Priming pump 202
Priming the fuel system 202
Profiles 256, 280
Programmable cruise control 146
Protecting children .. 104, 106–108, 110, 114–116
Public fast charging station 179, 185
Puncture 204, 206

R

Radar (warnings) 139
Radio 239–241, 250–251, 274
Radio, digital (Digital Audio Broadcasting - DAB) 240, 252, 275
Range, AdBlue® 195
RDS 240, 251, 274
Rear screen, demisting 78
Recharging the battery 216–217
Recharging the traction battery 180
Recharging the traction battery (Electric) 176, 183, 185–186
Recirculation, air 75–76
Recovery 218
Recovery of the vehicle 218
Reduction of electrical load 188
Regeneration of the particle filter 196
Regenerative braking (deceleration by engine braking) 132–133
Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system 137
Reinitialising the remote control 41
Reminder, key in ignition 121
Reminder, lighting on 84
Remote control 32–35, 37–38, 119
Remotely operable functions (Electric) ... 81, 186
Removing a wheel 207–208
Removing the mat 60
Replacing bulbs 209–210
Replacing fuses 214
Replacing the air filter 196
Replacing the oil filter 196
Replacing the passenger compartment filter 196
Reservoir, screenwash 195
Rev counter 10, 12
Reversing camera 139, 163, 166–167
Reversing lamps 213
Roof 60
Roof bars 191
Roof flap 44

Running out of fuel (Diesel) 202

S

Safety, children 104, 106–108, 110, 114–116
Saturation of the particle filter (Diesel) 196
Screen, cold climate 188
Screen menu map 254
Screenwash 89
Screenwash, front 88
Screenwash, rear 89
SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) 197
Seat belts 99–102, 109
Seat, bench front, 2-seat 55–56, 100
Seat, rear bench 56, 58
Seats, front 50–52, 55–56
Seats, front bench 55–56
Seats, heated 52–53
Seats, Multiflex ~ Extenso Cab 68
Seats, rear 50, 55–58, 107
Selector, gear 130–132
Sensors (warnings) 140
Serial number, vehicle 236
Service indicator 20
Servicing 20, 195
Settings, equipment 29–30
Settings, system 244, 257, 280
Shield, snow 188
Sidelamps 83–85, 210–211
Side parking sensors 162
Side repeater 211
Silent vehicle warning sound (Electric) . . . 95, 118
Sliding side door, electric 37, 44
Smartphone 62
Snow chains 137, 188
Snow screen 188
Socket, 12 V accessory 60–61
Socket, 220 V 62
Socket, auxiliary 241, 252, 275
Socket, Jack 275
Speed limiter 142–145, 152
Speed limit recognition 140, 142
Speedometer 10, 12, 140
Sport mode 134
Stability control (ESC) 95–98
Starting a Diesel engine 174
Starting the engine 119, 121
Starting the vehicle 120, 122, 127–129, 131
Starting using another battery 122, 215
Station, radio 239–240, 250–251, 274
Stay, bonnet 192
Steering mounted controls, audio 237–238, 248, 261
Steering wheel, adjustment 53
Stickers, customising ~ Stickers, expressive 201
Stopping the vehicle 121–122, 127–129, 131–132
Stop & Start 28, 74, 78, 134–136, 174, 192, 195, 218
Storage 60
Storage boxes 63
Stowing rings 67
Sunshine sensor 73
Super-fast charging (Electric) 185–186, 236
Surround Rear Vision 164
Switching off the engine 119, 121
Synchronising the remote control 41

T

Tables of engines 236
Tank, fuel 174–175
Technical data 227–231, 235, 236
Telephone 242–243, 255–256, 277–279
Time (setting) 244, 257, 281
TMC (Traffic info) 268
Tools 203
Topping-up AdBlue® 198
Touch screen 28–30, 81
Towbar 96, 189
Towed loads 227–231, 235, 236
Towing another vehicle 218–219
Towing eye 219
Traction battery charge 180
Traction battery (Electric) 30, 176–177, 236
Traction control (ASR) 96–98
Traffic information (TMC) 268
Trailer 96, 189
Trailer stability assist (TSA) 96
Trajectory control systems 95
Triangle, warning 67
Trip computer 27–28
Type of bulbs 210
Tyres 197, 236
Tyre under-inflation detection 136–137, 206

U

Under-inflation (detection) 136
Unlocking 32–37
Unlocking from the inside 41–42
Unlocking, selective 34–35
Unlocking, total 34–35
Updating the date 258, 280
Updating the time 244, 257, 281
USB 241, 252–253, 271, 275

V

Vehicle data recording and privacy 285
Ventilation 73–75, 79–80
Video 276
Visiopark 1 166
Voice commands 263–266

W

Wallbox (Electric) 179
Warning and indicator lamps 13–14
Warning lamp, driver's seat belt
not fastened 101
Warning lamps 14
Warning lamp, seat belts 101
Warnings and indicators 13–14
Washer jets, heated 78
Washing 140
Washing (advice) 177, 200–201
Weights 227–231, 235, 236
Welcome lighting 33
Wheel, spare 137, 197, 202–203,
206–207, 209
Windows, rear doors 49
Windscreen, heated 78
Windscreen wipers 88, 90
Wiper blades (changing) 89–90
Wiper, rear 89
Wipers 88, 90
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive 90

Automobiles CITROËN declares, in accordance with the provisions of European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End-of-Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproducing and translating this document, even partially, is strictly prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles CITROËN.

4DCONCEPT
Groupe MAURY Imprimeur

PEFC 10-31-1282

IMPRIM'VERT®

Printed in the EU
10-21

Automobiles CITROËN
Siège social : 2-10, boulevard de l'Europe - 78300 POISSY
www.citroen.com
Société anonyme au capital de 159 000 000 € - R.C.S. VERSAILLES : 642 050 199

CITROËN

ANG. 21K9C.0040